

SECOND TERM

English

6th PRIMARY

20
26

6



Contents

Unit 1 Celebrating Creativity	4
Unit 2 Wonderful Inventions	44
Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt	81
Review 1	124
Unit 4 Egypt on The Move	130
Unit 5 Safe and Smart Transportation from Egypt's Future	171
Unit 6 Story: The Library That Time Forgot	208
Review 2	219
Monthly Tests	222
General Activities	232
Listening	277

Celebrating Creativity

الاحتفال بالابداع

Unit One



Objectives

Vocabulary :

whisper, canvas, paintbrush, palette, carve, sculpture, masterpiece, incredible, art gallery, mural, sculptor, talented, sketch

Language :

Conjunction Pairs (either - or / both - and / neither - nor)

Life Skills :

Self-expression

Values :

Cultural Awareness

Integrated Learning Activities:

A poster about a museum

A Visit to the Art Gallery

زيارة إلى معرض الفنون

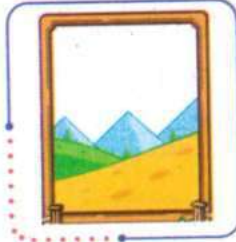
Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



whisper

يهمس



canvas

لوحة الرسم



paintbrush

فرشاة الرسم



palette

لوحة الألوان



carve

ينحت



sculpture

منحوتة / فن النحت



masterpiece

تحفة فنية



art gallery

معرض الفنون

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

artist

رسام

pottery

خزف / فخار

wooden statue

تمثال خشبي

mural

لوحة جدارية

paint

لون / دهان

quietly

بهدهوء

hammer

شاكوش

skill

مهارة

knife

سكين

board

لوح

paintings

رسومات

metal

معدن

surface

سطح

secret

سر

museum

متحف

tool

أداة

inspired by

مستوحى من / متأثر بـ

look like

يشبه

piece

قطعة

Unit 1

Adjectives

الصفات

young	صغير السن	powerful	قوى / عظيم
huge	ضخم	strange	غريب
giant	عملاق	inspired	مُلهم
bored	شاعر بالملل / مضجر	tired	متعب
soft	ناعم	flat	مسطح

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

الأفعال المنتظمة

وهي الأفعال التي لها نفس الشكل في التصريف الثاني والثالث وتنتهي بـ (d) أو (ed) أو (ied).

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Past participle	التصريف الثالث
wish	يتمنى	wished	wished	wished	
display	يعرض	displayed	displayed	displayed	
point	يشير	pointed	pointed	pointed	
shape	يُشكل	shaped	shaped	shaped	
admire	يعجب	admired	admired	admired	

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Past participle	التصريف الثالث
take	يأخذ	took	taken	taken	
do	يفعل	did	done	done	
have / has	يملك	had	had	had	
feel	يشعر	felt	felt	felt	
put	يضع	put	put	put	
cut	يقطع	cut	cut	cut	
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken	spoken	
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	heard	
make	يصنع	made	made	made	
see	يرى	saw	seen	seen	
am / is	يكون	was	been	been	
are	يكونوا	were	been	been	
say	يقول	said	said	said	
go	يذهب	went	gone	gone	

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

whisper: to speak quietly so only one or two people could hear.

تهمس: أن تتحدث بهدوء حتى يتمكن شخص أو شخصان فقط من السماع.

canvas: the surface (often cloth) an artist paints on.

لوحة الرسم: هي سطح (غالبًا قماش) يرسم عليه الرسام.

paintbrush: a soft tool used by artists to put paint on a picture.

فرشاة الرسم: أداة ناعمة تُستخدم بواسطة الرسامين لوضع لون على صورة.

palette: a flat board artists use to mix colors.

لوحة الألوان: هي لوح مسطح يستخدمه الرسامون لمزج الألوان.

carve: to cut or shape wood or stone to make art.

تحت: أن تقطع أو تشكل خشب أو حجارة لتصنع عمل فني.

sculpture: a piece of art made by shaping stone, wood, or metal.

منحوتة: هي قطعة فنية مصنوعة عن طريق تشكيل حجر أو خشب أو معدن.

masterpiece: a beautiful piece of art made with great skill.

تحفة فنية: هي قطعة فنية جميلة مصنوعة بمهارة رائعة.

Check your Vocab.

S.B Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ وأكمل.

(whispered – canvas – palette – sculpture – masterpiece)

1. The artist used a to mix red, blue, and yellow colors.
2. The teacher asked the students to paint on a large
3. The little girl a secret to her best friend during art class.
4. The museum displayed a beautiful stone of an ancient king.
5. The artist's final painting was a true that everyone admired.

Reading :

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

You know, Lily was a young artist who loved to draw. So, one Saturday, her family took her to, uh, a big art gallery. Oh, she was so excited!

كما تعلمون، كانت ليلي فنانة شابة تُحب الرسم. لذا، في أحد أيام السبت، أخذتها عائلتها إلى معرض فني كبير. اوه، كانت متحمسة جدًا!

"Wow," she whispered. "Look at that!" First, she saw these huge paintings on a canvas.

"Mmm," she said, "I wish I had my paintbrush and palette with me right now!" Then, they walked into a room with beautiful pottery and a giant wooden statue that an artist used a hammer to carve. It looked so strong and powerful!

همست قائلة: "واو." "انظروا إلى هذا!" في البداية، رأت رسومات ضخمة على لوحة رسم. "همم"، قالت، "أتمنى لو كانت فرشاتي ولوحة ألواني معي الآن!" ثم دخلوا غرفة مليئة بإعمال خزفية جميلة وتمثالًا خشبيًا ضخماً كان فنانٌ ينحته بشاكوش. بدا قويًا وعظيماً للغاية!

Lily also loved a strange, colorful sculpture. She even saw a huge, bright mural on the wall. Her mom pointed to a very old painting. "This," she said, "is a masterpiece." Lily felt so inspired by everything she saw. She couldn't wait to go home and start her own masterpiece right away!

أحببت ليلي أيضًا منحوتة غريبة وملونة. حتى أنها رأت جدارية ضخمة زاهية على الحائط. أشارت والدتها إلى لوحة قديمة جدًا وقالت "هذه تحفة فنية." شعرت ليلي بإلهام كبير من كل ما رآته. كانت متشوقة للعودة إلى المنزل وبدء تحفتها الفنية الخاصة فورًا!

Read again and answer the following questions.

- 1- Where did Lily's family take her on Saturday?
.....
- 2- What did Lily wish she had with her at the art gallery?
.....
- 3- What did the artist use to carve the wooden statue?
.....

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع و ضع (T) للصحيح و (F) للخطأ. (في الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Lily loved a strange, colorful pottery. ()
2. Her dad pointed to a very old painting. ()
3. Lily felt so inspired. ()
4. She couldn't wait to go home. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A is a piece of art made by shaping stone, wood, or metal.
a) sculpture b) paintbrush c) palette d) art
2. The artists use hammers to wooden statues.
a) paint b) mix c) carve d) walk
3. This artwork is a, so people remember it forever.
a) masterpiece b) palette c) tool d) paintbrush
4. A palette is a flat board artists use to colors.
a) mix b) fix c) cut d) eat
5. We saw huge paintings on a
a) hammer b) board c) canvas d) wood

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ وأكمل.

(masterpiece - gallery - paintbrushes - artist - carved)

I am Asser. I love art very much. So I love my art teacher. He is a skilled (1)..... He used a lot of tools to make artworks, like palettes, (2)....., canvases, and hammers. He (3)..... a huge, wooden sculpture using a hammer. I think it's a (4)..... I want to have skills like him.

Unit 1

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Kinda was a young artist. She went to the art gallery with her family. First, she saw a huge stone sculpture. The artist used special tools to carve it. It was very strong! Next, she looked at a painting on a canvas. "What a masterpiece!" she whispered.

She also loved the old pottery on the shelves. Kinda felt completely inspired by everything she saw. She couldn't wait to go home that day and start her own masterpiece. She started to draw with her paintbrush and palette right away.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Kinda was a young
a) doctor b) teacher c) artist d) pilot
- 2- The underlined word "huge" means very
a) small b) big c) short d) tiny

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What did she love?
.....
- 4- How did Kinda feel after she went to the art gallery?
.....
- 5- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- She was an artist and loved to (drawing).
- 2- The artists used hammers to (carves) sculptures.
- 3- She couldn't (waiting) to go home.
- 4- What did you (used) to paint?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

1. She - huge - saw - paintings - on - canvas - a .

.....

2. had - my paintbrush - I - and - palette - draw - to .

.....

3. did - Lily - How - after - feel - the gallery - visiting ?

.....

4. artist - The - a - palette - uses - mix - colors - to .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

it looks so strange and wonderful

.....

How did lily feel

.....

8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:

" Art gallery "

اكتب فقرة من ٦٠ كلمة عن "المعرض الفني".

(sculptures - carve)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

What's in the Frame?

ماذا يوجد في الإطار؟

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

frame
photograph
image
while
others
forever
boring
poem
figure
according to
messy

إطار
صورة فوتوغرافية
رسم / صورة
بينما
آخرون
للأبد
ممل
قصيدة
مجسم / شكل
طبقاً لـ
فوضوي

types
talent
creativity
alive
artwork
modern
imagination
clay
crowded
is known as

أنواع
موهبة
إبداع
حي
عمل فني
حديث
خيال
صلصال / طين
مزدحم
معروف كـ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Past participle	التصريف الثالث
create	يبدع / ينشئ	created		created	
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed		enjoyed	
remember	يتذكر	remembered		remembered	
prefer	يفضل	preferred		preferred	
seem	يبدو	seemed		seemed	
describe	يصف	described		described	

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Past participle	التصريف الثالث
tell	يخبر	told		told	
show	يوضح / يُري	showed		showed / shown	
become	يصبح	became		become	
find	يجد	found		found	
stand	يقف	stood		stood	
write	يكتب	wrote		written	
sing	يغني	sang		sung	
choose	يختار	chose		chosen	
buy	يشترى	bought		bought	

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- is to shape the wood into a figure.
a) Find b) Choose c) Carve d) Sing
- is to speak quietly.
a) Whisper b) Stood c) Shown d) Tell
- He has a great to make a masterpiece.
a) image b) visitor c) alive d) talent
- I don't watch this movie. It's
a) boring b) modern c) good d) funny
- The museum is It's full of people.
a) empty b) crowded c) creative d) image



Main points

- Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph.
- داخل الإطار يمكن أن يوجد إما رسمة أو صورة فوتوغرافية.
- Artists use their paintbrushes and palettes to mix colors.
- الرسامون يستخدمون فرشاتهم ولوحات الألوان لمزج الألوان.
- Both sculpture and painting show talent and creativity.
- كلا من النحت والرسم يُظهران الموهبة والإبداع.
- Great artists can carve wood or stone to make shapes.
- الفنانون العظماء يمكنهم أن ينحتوا الخشب أو الحجر لصنع أشكال.
- Some artworks become masterpieces.
- بعض الأعمال الفنية تصبح تحف فنية.
- Visitors stand quietly and whisper to each other about what they see in the art gallery.
- الزوار يقفون هادئين ويهمسون لبعضهم عما رأوه في معرض الفنون.

Reading : What's in the Frame?

ماذا يوجد داخل الإطار؟

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Every frame tells a story. Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph that shows something special. Artists use their paintbrushes and palettes to mix colors and create beautiful images on a canvas.



كل إطار يروي قصة. داخل الإطار، قد تجد لوحة أو صورة تظهر شيء مميز. يستخدم الفنانون فرشاتهم ولوحات ألوانهم لمزج الألوان وصنع صور جميلة على لوحة الرسم.

Some artists prefer sculpture, while others enjoy painting, but both types of art show talent and creativity. Great artists can carve wood or stone to make strong shapes that seem alive!

يفضل بعض الفنانين النحت، بينما يستمتع آخرون بالرسم. لكن كلا النوعين من الفن يُظهر موهبة وإبداعًا. يستطيع الفنانون العظماء نحت الخشب أو الحجر لصنع أشكال قوية تبدو حية.

Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces that people remember forever. Inside a gallery, you can find both modern and old pieces of art. Sometimes, visitors stand quietly and whisper to each other about what they see.

ليس كل عمل فني مشهورًا، لكن بعضها يصبح تحف فنية يتذكرها الناس للأبد. داخل المعرض، يمكنك أن تجد قطع فنية حديثة وقديمة. أحيانًا، يقف الزوار بهدوء ويتهامسون فيما بينهم حول ما يرونه.

Art is everywhere; it's neither boring nor difficult. It's full of color, feeling, and imagination!

الفن في كل مكان؛ ليس مملاً ولا صعبًا. إنه مليء بالألوان والمشاعر والخيال!

Read again and answer the following questions.

1- What can be found inside a frame?

2- What tools do artists use to mix colors?

3- What can visitors do in a gallery?

Language

Conjunction pairs

روابط مزدوجة

★ **either ... or** أما أو

- تستخدم للتخيير بين شيئين ويكون خيار واحد فقط هو الممكن.

- Ex: - There can be **either** a painting **or** a photograph.
- You can choose **either** a sculpture **or** a painting for your art project.

★ **neither ... nor** لا و لا

- تستخدم للتعبير عن انه يوجد خيارين غير حقيقيين أو غير ممكنين.

- Ex: - Art is **neither** boring **nor** difficult.
- The gallery is **neither** small **nor** crowded. It is just perfect!

★ **both and** كلا من و

- تستخدم للتعبير عن أن شيئين حقيقيان أو ممكنان في نفس الوقت.

- Ex: - **Both** painting **and** sculpture show talent and creativity.
- The artwork is **both** interesting **and** colorful.

Check your language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- (S.B) You can find a painting a photograph in the gallery.
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and
- 2- (S.B) The new art teacher is kind creative.
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and
- 3- (S.B) We can visit the modern museum the old one.
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and
- 4- (S.B) The classroom has big windows colorful walls.
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and

Unit 1

- 5- (S.B) You can paint a sea view a mountain scene.
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and
- 6- I know your brother your sister. Can you introduce them to me?
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and
- 7- You can choose to play football with us to sit and watch.
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and
- 8- We can eat at a restaurant go home and have dinner there.
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and
- 9- The policemen are strong brave.
a) either - or b) both - and c) neither - nor d) so - and
- 10- Mona Reem went shopping. They met at the supermarket.
a) Either - or b) Both - and c) Neither - nor d) So - and

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- You can choose (both) tennis or football to play.
- 2- I like neither Arabic (and) history.
- 3- My friend likes (either) art and music.
- 4- (Both) Ali or Ahmed took my pen.
- 5- We will visit both the park (nor) the theme park.
- 6- Ali likes watching (both) cartoon nor action films.
- 7- I visited (either) Cairo and Giza in summer.
- 8- (Either) Dina and Aya visited me last week.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- The artist put the picture in a beautiful
 a) frame b) color c) brush d) wall
- 2- The painter mixed many colors on her
 a) canvas b) palette c) frame d) brush
- 3- The child to her mother. No one heard them.
 a) whispered b) sang c) laughed d) shouted
- 4- I can play neither the guitar the piano.
 a) or b) nor c) and d) to
- 5- Painters usually use a and brushes to make their artwork.
 a) poem b) mirror c) canvas d) floor
- 6- You can have the soup or the salad.
 a) neither b) both c) either d) too
- 7- The painting was so beautiful that everyone called it a
 a) copy b) mistake c) masterpiece d) frame

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ واكمل.

(shapes - painting - carve - brush - creativity)

Some artists prefer sculpture, while others enjoy (1), but both types of art show talent and (2) Great artists can (3) wood or stone to make fantastic (4) that seem alive! That's so wonderful.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

A frame can hold either a painting or a photograph. Artists use paintbrushes and palettes to create artworks on canvases, while others carve stone for sculpture. Galleries have both modern and old masterpieces. Great artists show talent and creativity in their artworks. Some artworks become masterpieces that people

Unit 1

remember forever. At galleries, visitors sometimes stand quietly and whisper to each other about what they see. Art is neither boring nor difficult. It's everywhere and full of color.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Artists use and palettes to create artworks on canvases.
a) book b) paintbrushes c) tool d) paper
- 2- The opposite of the underlined word "modern" is
a) ancient b) new c) pretty d) fast

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What do galleries have?

.....

- 4- What do visitors sometimes do?

.....

- 5- What happens when artists show talent and creativity in their artworks?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

- 1- Art - neither - boring - nor - difficult - is .

.....

- 2- new - The - both - teacher - is - and - kind - helpful .

.....

- 3- you - Do - like - at - looking - paintings ?

.....

- 4- tools - What - artists - do - use - mix - to - colors ?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- The museum has (either) old artworks and modern ones.
- 2- You can visit either the art museum (nor) the history museum this weekend.

- 3- (Either) the museum nor the gallery was open on Monday.
- 4- We took photos of (neither) the main hall and the outdoor statues.
- 5- The guide said we can either paint in the workshop (nor) watch the artists.
- 6- Both the painting (or) the sculpture were created by local artists.
- 7- The movie was (either) funny and exciting.
- 8- I want (either) coffee nor juice, just water, please.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

what can be found inside the frame

some artworks become famous masterpieces

7 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:

" Art "

اكتب فقرة من ٦٠ كلمة عن " الفن " .

(frame – masterpieces)

A) An Egyptian Masterpiece

تحفة فنية مصرية

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

talented

موهوب

exhibition

معرض

incredible

مذهل

sketch

اسكتش / رسم تخطيطي

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

truly

حقًا / بحق

student

تلميذ

Sphinx

أبو الهول

right

تمامًا / بالضبط

absolutely

بالتأكيد / بالطبع

tiny

ضئيل

definitely

حتما / بلا شك

impressive

مؤثر / مبهرج

university

جامعة

painter

رسام

prefer..... to

يفضل ... عن ...

Nahdit Masr

تمثال نهضة مصر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Past participle	التصريف الثالث
imagine	يتخيل	imagined		imagined	
impress	يبهر	impressed		impressed	

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Past participle	التصريف الثالث
begin	يبدأ	began		begun	

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- A painting on a wall is called a
 a) moral b) mural c) sketch d) exhibition
- 2- He can answer math easily. He is
 a) talented b) painter c) tiny d) truly
- 3- After I finish school, I will go to the
 a) sculpture b) canvas c) pottery d) university
- 4- This statue is very Everyone admired it.
 a) impressive b) definitely c) carve d) right
- 5- The artist showed us a before painting the picture.
 a) painter b) student c) sketch d) university



Main points

- Mahmoud Mokhtar is a truly talented Egyptian artist.
 - محمود مختار هو فنان مصري موهوب حقاً.
- He made a big statue called Nahdit Masr.
 - لقد صنع تمثال كبير يسمى نهضة مصر.
- The statue shows a woman and a sphinx.
 - التمثال يعرض امرأة وأبو هول.
- He also made a mural and painted a small canvas when he was at university.
 - لقد صنع أيضاً لوحة جدارية ورسم لوحة صغيرة عندما كان في الجامعة.

Reading

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ali : Karim, remember that amazing art exhibition we visited last month? It was about a truly talented Egyptian artist.

علي: كريم، هل تتذكر معرض الفن الرائع الذي زرنه الشهر الماضي؟ كان عن فنان مصري موهوب حقاً.

Karim: Oh, yes! It was about Mahmoud Mokhtar. He made a big statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. I cannot imagine how he began to carve this huge statue.

كريم: نعم! كان عن محمود مختار. صنع تمثالاً كبيراً اسمه "نهضة مصر". يُظهر امرأة وأبو هول. لا أستطيع تخيل كيف بدأ نحت هذا التمثال الضخم.

Ali : I know! The sculpture was absolutely incredible. I also saw his first sketch for it. But I definitely preferred his paintings. Did you see the beautiful mural he created?

علي: أعرف! كان التمثال مذهلاً بالتأكيد. رأيت أيضاً أول رسم تخطيطي له. لكنني بالتأكيد فضلت لوحاته. هل رأيت الجدارية الجميلة التي رسمها؟

Karim: I did! And I saw the small canvas he painted when he was a university student. It was right next to both his old palette and a tiny paintbrush. His pottery room was also very interesting. He really was a talented artist.

كريم: نعم! ورأيت اللوحة الصغيرة التي رسمها عندما كان طالباً جامعياً. كانت بالضبط بجوار "كلا" من لوحة الألوان القديمة وفرشاة الرسم الصغيرة الخاصين به. كانت غرفة الفخار الخاصة به مثيرة للاهتمام أيضاً. لقد كان فناناً موهوباً حقاً.

1 (s.b) Write (T) true or (F) false.

اكتب (T) للصواب أو (F) للخطأ.

- 1- Mahmoud Mokhtar was a painter only and didn't make any sculptures. ()
- 2- Karim's favorite artwork was "Nahdit Masr." ()
- 3- Ali preferred Mahmoud Mokhtar's paintings to his sculptures. ()
- 4- Mahmoud Mokhtar used to paint with a big brush at university. ()
- 5- The students also saw Mokhtar's pottery room at the exhibition. ()

2 Answer the following questions

أجب الأسئلة الآتية.

- 1- Who was the artist at the exhibition?
- 2- What is the name of his most famous masterpiece?

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع و ضع (T) للصح و (F) للخطأ.

أو الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Mahmoud Mokhtar painted when he was a university student. ()
2. The small canvas was next to both his old paper and a big paintbrush. ()
3. His music room was very interesting. ()
4. He really was a talented artist. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The coach will choose players for the football team.
a) lazy b) tired c) talented d) sad
2. The artist painted a beautiful on the school wall.
a) mural b) meal c) metal d) mirror
3. The view from the top of the mountain was I loved it.
a) boring b) terrible c) incredible d) short
4. The artist made a quick of the house before painting it.
a) recipe b) music c) story d) sketch
5. He saw both his old palette a tiny paintbrush.
a) and b) or c) nor d) to
6. A is the surface that an artist paints on.
a) canvas b) palette c) frame d) brush
7. Artists use clay to make
a) poems b) painter c) pottery d) tiny
8. He has got a brother nor a sister.
a) either b) both c) so d) neither

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Egypt is famous for its amazing art. From ancient times until now, Egyptian artists have both talent and creativity. They work with all kinds of art, like pottery, sculpture, and painting. We can see the

Unit 1

ancient art in museums and temples. Many modern artists created masterpieces that people will remember forever. One of these modern, talented artists is Mahmoud Mokhtar. He carved the incredible sculpture called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman from the country and a sphinx. He also created a famous mural. His exhibition shows his tools and canvases. You should visit it.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The main idea of the text is about Egyptian
a) women b) workers c) artists d) exhibitions
- 2- The underlined word "mural" means a painting on a
a) wall b) sketch c) canvas d) sculpture

B Answer the following questions.

3- What do Egyptian artists have?

.....

4- What kinds of art do Egyptian artists work with?

.....

5- What did Mahmoud Mokhtar carve?

.....

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ واكمل.

(artist - talented - mural - table - sketch)

Maya and Omar like art. They discussed a great art show by a great

(1)..... Omar loved the huge statue. First, he saw its

(2)....., but Maya preferred his paintings, especially a

beautiful (3)..... on the wall. They agreed that the artist was

(4)....., when they saw his early canvases and pottery.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

1. Did - see - you - beautiful - the - mural?

.....

2. sculpture - The - was - incredible - absolutely .

3. was - the - at - Who - artist - exhibition - the ?

6

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1- He (paints) a canvas when he was a university student.

2- We (visit) the art exhibition last month.

3- What (are) the name of the most famous masterpiece?

4- I can't (imagines) how he began to carve this statue.

5- His pottery room (were) very interesting.

7

Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

he really was a talented artist

what do you think of this painting

8

Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:

"An Egyptian masterpiece"

اكتب فقرة من ٦٠ كلمة عن "تحفة فنية مصرية".

(talented - mural)

B: Pronunciation

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

Tip

المقطع الصوتي : هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي عادة على صوت متحرك واحد.

Let's listen carefully to how the syllables change!

Word Syllables Pronunciation Tip

- ease** It's one long sound stretch it like "eeez."
easy Say it as EE-zee. The first syllable is strong.
easily Say it as EE-zuh-lee. Keep your voice light and smooth.

Clap the syllables while you say them:

ease (1)  easy (2)   easily (3)   

Stressed syllable المقطع المشدد

هو المقطع الذي ينطق أقوى وأعلى من باقي مقاطع الكلمة.

Two-syllable words

في الصفات والاسماء التي لها مقطعين يكون المقطع الأول هو المشدد.

REcord - PREsent TAble PICture HAppy

في الأفعال التي لها مقطعين يكون المقطع الثاني هو المشدد.

reCORD - preSENT beGIN deCIDE reLAX

Three-syllable words

إذا انتهت الكلمة بـ (ly - er) يكون المقطع الأول هو المشدد.

MANager CLEVerly HAPpily

إذا انتهت الكلمة بحرف ساكن أو (y) يكون المقطع الأول هو المشدد.

ANimal FAMily CHEmistry

1 Listen and circle the word that has the correct number of syllables.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Which word has two syllables?

a) computer

b) apple

c) beautiful

2- Which word has three syllables?

a) pencil

b) elephant

c) happy

3. Which word has one syllable?

a) cat

b) tablet

c) beautiful

4. Which word has three syllables?

a) fantastic

b) phone

c) dog

2 Listen and count the number of syllables.

استمع واحسب عدد المقاطع.

1- artist



.....

2- statue



.....

3- beautiful



.....

4- remember



.....

5- Egyptian



.....

6- masterpiece



.....

3 Sort the words according to the number of syllables.

صنف الكلمات حسب عدد المقاطع.

(about - pottery - remember - talented - palette - amazing)

Two syllables

.....

.....

Three syllables

.....

.....

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

clay vase	زهريّة من الفخار	middle	وسط	base	قاعدة
toothpick	عود أسنان	top	قمة	design	تصميم
shade	ظل / تدرج لوني	patterns	نقوش	texture	لمس
treasure	كنز	size	حجم	hall	صالة / قاعة
mask	قناع	artifact	قطعة أثرية	tourist	سائح
workshop	ورشة عمل	temple	معبد	sculptor	نحات
The Grand Egyptian Museum			المتحف المصري الكبير		

Adjectives

الصفات

wide	واسع	colorful	ملون	pointy	مدبب / حاد
narrow	ضيق	pale	باهت	curved	منحني
bright	فاتح	round	مستدير	medium	متوسط
dark	غامق	square	مربع الشكل	shiny	براق / لامع
rough	خشن	soft	لين / ناعم		
smooth	أملس / ناعم	hard	صلب		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Past participle	التصريف الثالث
polish	يُلمع	polished		polished	
dry	يجفف	dried		dried	
join	ينضم الى	joined		joined	

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Past participle	التصريف الثالث
build	يبني	built		built	

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- The museum has a lot of
a) treasures b) texture c) temple d) mask
- 2- The place is wide, it isn't
a) pale b) narrow c) dark d) hard
- 3- The opposite of 'curved' is
a) smooth b) shiny c) round d) pointy
- 4- Artists use to make patterns on pottery.
a) toothpicks b) size c) hall d) base



Main points

- The Grand Egyptian Museum has ancient treasures.
- المتحف المصري الكبير به كنوز قديمة.
- It has many halls and galleries.
- إنه به الكثير من القاعات والمعارض.
- Visitors can see the golden mask of Tutankhamun.
- الزوار يمكن أن يروا القناع الذهبي لتوت عنخ آمون.
- Visitors can see famous artifacts.
- الزوار يمكنهم أنه يروا قطع أثرية مشهورة.
- You can join workshops to learn about the ancient Egyptians.
- يمكنك أن تنضم إلى ورش العمل لتتعلم عن المصريين القدماء.
- Families can enjoy food in the museum's garden café.
- العائلات يمكنهم أن يستمتعوا بالطعام في مقهى حديقة المتحف.

Reading

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

I made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a wide, round base and a narrow top. I used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand, mixing some of the colors to create new shades. The surface feels smooth and shiny because I polished it after it dried. There are small patterns around the middle, which I made using a toothpick. I'm proud of my vase because I worked hard on the design and took my time to make it special. It's one of my favorite art projects!

لقد صنعت زهرية فخارية ملونة. إنها طويلة، ذات قاعدة مستديرة وواسعة، وقمة ضيقة. استخدمت الطين الأحمر والأزرق والأصفر لتشكيلها بعناية بيدي، وخلطت بعض الألوان لأصنع درجات جديدة. السطح ناعم ولامع لأنني قمت بتلميعه بعد أن جف. توجد نقوش صغيرة حول منتصفها، صنعتها باستخدام عود أسنان. أنا فخور بزهرتي لأنني بذلت جهدًا في تصميمها وأخذت وقتي في جعلها مميزة. إنها واحدة من مشاريعي الفنية المفضلة!

Answer the following questions.

- 1- How is the base of the vase?
.....
- 2- Why did he mix some of the colors?
.....
- 3- Why is he proud of his vase?
.....

Note :

A descriptive paragraph helps you show your ideas, not just tell them. Using adjectives and details (like bright colors or soft clay) helps the reader imagine your art.

It makes your writing more fun, clear, and interesting to read.

- الفقرة الوصفية تساعدك في توضيح أفكارك وليس فقط أن تحكيها. استخدام الصفات والتفاصيل مثل : (ألوان ساطعة وطين ناعم) تساعد القارئ أن يتخيل الفن. إنها تجعل كتابتك ممتعة أكثر و واضحة وشيقة في قراءتها.

The Grand Egyptian Museum

Look and read the poster about the Grand Egyptian Museum.



People visit the museum to see ancient treasures and statues. They learn about the history of Egypt.

يزور الناس المتحف لمشاهدة الكنوز والتماثيل الأثرية، ويتعرفون على تاريخ مصر.



The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts.

المتحف به العديد من القاعات والمعارض الجميلة. يمكن للزوار مشاهدة القناع الذهبي للملك توت عنخ آمون، وقطع أثرية مشهورة أخرى.



Students and tourists watch videos and join workshops. They learn how the ancient Egyptians built temples.

يشاهد الطلاب والسياح مقاطع فيديو ويشاركون في ورش عمل، ويتعلمون كيف بنى المصريون القدما المعابد.



After the visit, families enjoy food in the museum's garden café. They talk about what they saw and take photos.

بعد الزيارة، تستمتع العائلات بتناول الطعام في مقهى حديقة المتحف. يتحدثون عما شاهدوه ويلتقطون صور.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) للصواب أو (F) للخطأ.

- 1- People visit the museum to see modern treasures. ()
- 2- They learn about the history of China. ()
- 3- The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. ()
- 4- Visitors can see the silver mask of King Tutankhamun. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- The street is very Cars can't pass easily.
a) narrow b) wide c) big d) long
- 2- The sculptor carefully tries to the clay into a beautiful statue.
a) melt b) shape c) fix d) run
- 3- He his shoes until they got shiny.
a) painted b) walked c) polished d) talked
- 4- He used a to clean the food stuck between his teeth.
a) knife b) spoon c) fork d) toothpick
- 5- Local artists give free art every weekend in the park.
a) treasures b) workshops c) trips d) breaks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل.

(create - vase - patterns - history - work)

The artist made a tall, colorful clay (1)..... with a wide base and a narrow top. He used red, blue, and yellow to (2)..... new, smooth, and shiny shades. He made small (3)..... with a toothpick. It's a special project because of the hard (4)..... and the time the design took.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is the largest museum in the world focused on a single civilization, located just two kilometers away from the famous Pyramids of Giza. People visit it to see over 100,000 of ancient objects. The museum has the complete group of 5,000 treasures belonging to King Tutankhamun, which are now shown together for the first time. Visitors can also see the giant Statue of Ramses II and the ancient Solar Boat of Khufu. Students and tourists can join workshops to learn more about history. It is a modern museum built to tell the story of ancient Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a) Egypt b) Boat c) Mask d) GEM
- 2- It has over 100,000 of objects.
 a) modern b) ancient c) new d) recent

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why do students and tourists join workshops?

.....

- 4- What can visitors see in the museum?

.....

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

- 1- People - to - museum - the - visit - see - treasures - ancient .

.....

- 2- enjoy - Some - families - food - in - garden - museum's - the .

.....

- 3- made - colorful - I - a - vase - clay .

.....

4- Why - visit - do - you - museum - the ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- The museum (have) beautiful halls and galleries.
- 2- He mixes some of the colors to (creating) new shades.
- 3- I (polishes) the statue after it dried.
- 4- I (is) proud of my vase.
- 5- (Either) Ali nor Omar came to school.
- 6- They like (neither) painting and sculpture.

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

my artwork looks incredible

what did you visit

8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum".

اكتب فقرة من ٦٠ كلمة عن "المتحف المصري الكبير".

(treasures - golden)

Review on unit

1

Important vocabulary

canvas	لوحة الرسم	frame	إطار
paintbrush	فرشاة رسم	image	صورة
palette	لوحة الألوان	talent	موهبة
sculpture	منحوتة / فن النحت	creativity	إبداع
masterpiece	تحفة فنية	imagination	خيال
art gallery	معرض الفنون	crowded	مزدحم
artist	فنان / رسام	incredible	مذهل
hammer	شاكوش	sketch	اسكتش
surface	سطح	exhibition	معرض
inspired by	مستوحى من / متأثر بـ	absolutely	بالتأكيد
mural	لوحة جدارية	impressive	مؤثر
pottery	فخار	patterns	نقوش
base	قاعدة	artifact	قطعة أثرية
treasure	كز	toothpick	عود اسنان
workshop	ورشة عمل	bright x dark	فاتح x غامق
wide x narrow	واسع x ضيق	colorful x pale	ملون x باهت
rough x smooth	خشن x ناعم	pointy x curved	مدبب x منحنى

Important verbs

Regular verbs

wish (ed)	يتمنى	shape (d)	يُشكل
display (ed)	يعرض	admire (d)	يعجب
create (d)	يبدع / ينشئ	carve (d)	ينحت
enjoy (ed)	يستمتع بـ	prefer (red)	يفضل
polish (ed)	يُلمع	dry (ied)	يجفف
seem (ed)	يبدو	describe (d)	يصف
remember (ed)	يتذكر	impress (ed)	يبهر
imagine (d)	يتخيل	join (ed)	ينضم إلى

Unit 1

Irregular verbs

take - took - taken	ياخذ	feel - felt - felt	يشعر
do - did - done	يفعل	put - put - put	يضع
(have / has) - had - had	يملك	cut - cut - cut	يقطع
speak - spoke - spoken	يتحدث	(am / is) - was - been	يكون
hear - heard - heard	يسمع	are - were - been	يكونوا
make - made - made	يصنع	say - said - said	يقول
see - saw - seen	يرى	become - became - become	يصبح
tell - told - told	يخبر	write - wrote - written	يكتب
build - built - built	يبني	sing - sang - sung	يغني
go - went - gone	يذهب	choose - chose - chosen	يختار
find - found - found	يجد	buy - bought - bought	يشترى
stand - stood - stood	يقف	begin - began - begun	يبدأ
show - showed - shown	يوضح		

Important paragraphs

A visit to the art gallery

Last week, I went to a big art gallery with my family. I saw huge paintings on canvases. We saw beautiful pottery and a giant wooden statue. The artist carved it well. I also saw a strange, colorful sculpture and a huge mural on the wall. They were masterpieces. I was inspired by everything I saw.

Art

Galleries have modern and old pieces of art. Every frame in the gallery tells a story, through a painting or a photograph that shows something special. Artists use colors, paintbrushes, and palettes to create images. Some artists prefer sculpture, but others prefer painting. Great artists can carve wood or stone. Some artworks become masterpieces.

A talented Egyptian artist

Mahmoud Mokhtar is a talented Egyptian artist. He is famous for a huge statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. He made a sketch for it first. Then, he carved it. He also made a beautiful mural. When he was a university student, he painted a small canvas. His pottery room is very interesting.

The Grand Egyptian Museum

The Grand Egyptian Museum is a great place to learn about Egypt's history. Visitors come to the museum to explore ancient Egyptian treasures including, King Tutankhamun's golden mask. They learn about history through videos and workshops. In the garden café, families can relax and have food. They talk and share what they saw and take photos.

Important language

either .. or

neither .. nor

both .. and

Ex: - You can **either** visit the museum **or** the library.

- The room is **neither** organized **nor** clean. It's messy.
- Mahmoud Mokhtar is **both** famous **and** talented.

Exercises on language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Art is neither boring (**or**) difficult.
- 2- (**Either**) painting and sculpture are exciting.
- 3- You can (**neither**) watch TV or play a game.
- 4- The teacher is both kind (**or**) helpful.

2 Find the mistakes in the following sentences.

- 1- Students can work with neither clay or paint. (.....)
- 2- The gallery is either modern or traditional. It includes the two styles. (.....)
- 3- You can choose to create both a painting and a sculpture. Only one of them. (.....)

General Test on unit 1

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces. ()
- 2- Outside the gallery, you can find both modern and old art. ()
- 3- Visitors stand quietly and shout to each other. ()
- 4- Art is full of color, feelings, and imagination. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The art gallery is open both on Sunday on Monday.
a) and b) or c) to d) nor
- 2- The painter is very His artwork looks incredible.
a) lazy b) board c) talented d) weak
- 3- The students began to so the teacher wouldn't hear them.
a) shout b) sing c) whisper d) laugh
- 4- talking loudly nor running is allowed inside the museum halls.
a) Neither b) Both c) Either d) And

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

(patterns – clay – narrow – time – proud)

I made a small, round sculpture. I used dark and bright (1)
The base is wide and the top is (2) The surface feels very
smooth. I made tiny (3) all over it. It was a hard project, but
I am very (4) of the beautiful result.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A talented artist named Alex decided that it was time to create a masterpiece. He brought a clean canvas and prepared his wooden palette. He picked up his favorite paintbrush and he started mixing colors. He took a short break to check his other artworks. There was a piece of blue pottery. Near it, a block of stone was waiting for him to carve out a great statue. He imagined the final form of the wonderful sculpture. Alex felt inspired by all his projects and went back to his painting. He decide to work on the statue later.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- He brought a clean

- a) canvas b) palette c) paintbrush d) photo

2- The underlined word "palette " means a flat board that artists use to colors.

- a) fix b) take c) mix d) move

B Answer the following questions.

3- What did Alex decide?

.....

4- Why did he take a short break?

.....

5- What is the main idea of the text?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- It - about - was - a - Egyptian - artist - talented .

.....

2- is - The - surface - shiny - smooth - and - both .

.....

Unit 1

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We can take either photos (nor) notes during the museum tour.
- 2- We visited both the science museum (or) the art gallery yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following.

some artists prefer sculpture

.....

when did you go to the art gallery

.....

8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:

"A talented artist".

(paintings – incredible)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test on unit 1

1 Read and complete the dialog.

(photos - galleries - mask - visitors - food - canvas)

Omar : Can you tell me about the Grand Egyptian Museum?

Hany: Sure! The museum has many halls and (1).....

Omar: What can (2)..... see there?

Hany: They can see the golden (3)..... of King Tutankhamun.

Omar : What can they do after the visit?

Hany : Families can enjoy (4)..... in the museum's garden café. They talk about what they saw and take (5).....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- You can choose to create (neither) a painting or a sculpture for the project.
- 2- Ali's room is neither messy (and) untidy. It is organized.
- 3- In art class, students can work with (either) clay and paint.
- 4- The artist (are) both creative and talented.
- 5- You can (painted) neither a sea view nor a mountain scene. Paint an animal.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The artist picked up his to start painting the sunset.
a) hammer b) ruler c) carve d) paintbrush
- 2- The artist painted a beautiful picture on a
a) walk b) food c) canvas d) café

Unit 1

- 3- The artist the sculpture until it became shiny.
a) painted b) broke c) talented d) polished
- 4- The street is too so it's crowded.
a) wide b) long c) narrow d) noisy
- 5- The school wall was decorated with a colorful
a) mural b) sculpture c) tool d) palette
- 6- The dress was bright and beautiful.
a) either b) neither c) both d) or
- 7- We can go to the cinema or the club.
a) either b) both c) neither d) nor
- 8- Both the painting the sculpture were created by a local artist.
a) or b) and c) nor d) either
- 9- Ali eats chips nor drinks cola. He is healthy.
a) either b) both c) neither d) and
- 10- Do you like either football basketball?
a) or b) and c) nor d) to

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct one.

- 1- museum - treasure - statues - Egypt (.....)
- 2- young - take - huge - bored (.....)
- 3- carve - whisper - paint - masterpiece (.....)
- 4- begin - exhibition - mural - art gallery (.....)
- 5- preferred - sang - found - stood (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sam, a young artist, was very excited to visit a large art gallery with his family. They first saw huge paintings on a canvas, wishing they had their art supplies. Next, Sam admired beautiful pottery, a large wooden statue that was carved by a hammer, and a strange sculpture. Sam also saw a bright mural and an old painting that their mother called a masterpiece. Feeling inspired by all the art, Sam was ready to go home and create his own work.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- They first saw huge paintings on a
 a) wall b) canvas c) door d) school
- 2- The meaning of the underlined verb "admired" is
 a) liked b) displayed c) hated d) showed

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Who is Sam?

- 4- What did Sam see? Write two.

- 5- What did Sam decide to do after feeling inspired?

**6 Write a paragraph of five sentences using the words below:
 "A masterpiece".**

(art – canvas – paintbrush – talented – carve)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Wonderful Inventions

اختراعات رائعة

Unit Two



Objectives

Vocabulary :

invention, gadgets, blueprint, tools, assemble, create, fabric, linen, wooden, threads, measure, time, gear, pendulum, design, accurate

Language :

Relative Pronouns (who – which – that – whose)

Life Skills :

Logical Thinking

Values :

- Innovation
- Creativity

Integrated Learning Activities :

Create a smart pencil holder

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



invention
اختراع



gadgets
أدوات / أجهزة



blueprint
تصميم أولي / مخطط



tools
أدوات



assemble
يجمع / يركب



improve
يطور / يحسن

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

flying carpet

سجادة طائرة

host

مضيف

part

جزء

engineer

مهندس

together

معا

solar robot kit

مجموعة روبوت شمسي

whole

الكل

machine

آلة / ماكينة

idea

فكرة

first step

أول خطوة

product

منتج

solar power

طاقة شمسية

method

طريقة

wheel

عجلة

device

جهاز

easily

بسهولة

musical instrument

آلة موسيقية

electricity

كهرباء

telescope

تليسكوب

properly

بطريقة صحيحة

battery

بطارية

model

نموذج

energy

طاقة

completely

بالكامل

plan

خطة

take apart

يفكك

run on

يعمل بـ

Adjectives

الصفات

detailed

مفصل

expensive

غالي

effective

فعال / مؤثر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
place	يضع	placed	يتجاهل
test	يختبر	ignored	يبدع / يبتكر
assemble	يجمع	innovate	يصلح
explore	يستكشف	fix	fixed
	explored		

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

blueprint : detailed plan or drawing for making something

مخطط : خطة مفصلة أو رسمة لعمل شيئاً ما

assemble : to put parts together to make a whole

يجمع : أن يضع أجزاء معاً لتكون الكل

improve : to make something better, or more effective

يطور : أن تجعل شيئاً ما أفضل أو فعال أكثر

tools : things used to fix, build, or create things

أدوات : أشياء تستخدم لإصلاح أو بناء أو إنشاء أشياء

invention : a new idea, product, or method created for the first time

اختراع : فكرة أو منتج أو طريقة جديدة توجد لأول مرة

gadget : a small, useful device or tool

أداة / جهاز : هي أداة أو جهاز صغير ومفيد

Check your Vocab.

S.B Write the correct word for each definition.

اكتب الكلمة الصحيحة لكل تعريف.

(tools – gadget – blueprint – assemble – invention – improve)

- 1- Detailed plan or drawing for making something
- 2- To put parts together to make a whole
- 3- To make something better, or more effective
- 4- Things used to fix, build, or create things.....
- 5- A new idea, product, or method created for the first time
- 6- A small, useful device or tool



Main points

- A talented engineer made a great invention.
- صنع مهندس موهوب اختراع عظيم.
- He made a solar robot kit.
- لقد صنع مجموعة روبوت تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية.
- The first step was designing a detailed blueprint.
- أول خطوة كانت تصميم نموذج مفصل.
- He assembled the small parts using the right tools.
- لقد جمع الأجزاء الصغيرة باستخدام الأدوات الصحيحة.
- The robot runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun.
- الانسان الآلي يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية، لذلك العجلات تتحرك عندما تضعه في الشمس.

Reading: The Brilliant Engineer

المهندس البارِع

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

A clear, friendly voice, as if hosting a show

صوت واضح وودود، كأنه يُقدِّم برنامجًا

Interviewer : Welcome back! Today, we have a talented young engineer here with an amazing invention—the solar robot gadget. Can you tell us more about this gadget?

المُحاور : مرحبا بعودتكم اليوم، معنا هنا مهندس شاب موهوب باختراع مذهل - جهاز الروبوت الشمسي. هل يمكنك إخبارنا المزيد عن هذا الجهاز؟

Young Engineer: Thank you! I wanted to create a simple gadget that feels like a small machine. The first step was designing a detailed blueprint.

المهندس الشاب : شكرًا لك! أردتُ صنع جهاز بسيط يشبه آلة صغيرة. الخطوة الأولى كانت تصميم مخطط تفصيلي.

Interviewer : Wow! How do we use it?

المُحاور : رائع! كيف نستخدمه؟

Young Engineer: First, you assemble the small parts using the right tools. The robot runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun. If something isn't working, you can easily improve it. This invention is a fun way to explore new ideas every day. Let's get started!

المهندس الشاب : أولًا، تقوم بتجميع الأجزاء الصغيرة باستخدام الأدوات المناسبة، يعمل الروبوت بالطاقة الشمسية، لذا تتحرك العجلات عند وضعه في الشمس. إذا كان هناك أي عطل، يمكنك تحسينه بسهولة. هذا الاختراع طريقة ممتعة لاستكشاف أفكار جديدة كل يوم. هيا نبدأ!

Read again and answer:

اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم أجب.

1- What is the invention?

2- What was his first step in creating the gadget?

3- How do the wheels of the robot move?

Exercises

Lesson

1

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. First, you assemble the small parts using the right tools. ()
2. The robot runs on wind power. ()
3. If something isn't working, you can easily improve it. ()
4. This blueprint is a fun way to explore new ideas every day. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- He tried to the gadget parts carefully.
a) test b) assemble c) run d) tell
- 2- Every new can make life easier and more interesting.
a) invention b) vacation c) game d) lesson
- 3- He bought a new kitchen that cuts vegetables automatically.
a) energy b) gadget c) wheel d) host
- 4- Every invention starts with a
a) electricity b) wheel c) carpet d) blueprint
- 5- Exercise every day to your health and energy.
a) improve b) destroy c) forget d) hide

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(assemble - improve - blueprint - walk - tools)

My new invention is a fun little robot gadget. First, I drew a detailed (1), so I knew how to assemble everything. I used the right (2) to help me with the small parts. I had to (3) the robot's arms and legs very carefully. Now, I want to (4) some parts to make it move faster.

Unit 2

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- What - was - step - first - the - in - invention - the ?

2- wanted - I - to - a - create - gadget - simple .

3- have - We - a - young - engineer - talented - here .

4- How - the wheels - do - robot - of - move - the ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- The robot (run) on solar power.

2- What can you (did) if any part isn't working properly?

3- How (does) we use this kit correctly?

6 Punctuate the following.

can you tell us about the gadget

it's like a small machine

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

" The brilliant engineer " .

(blueprint – improve)

Key Vocabulary



fabric
قماش



threads
خيوط



linen
كتان



wooden
خشبي



loom
نول

المفردات الرئيسية

Vocabulary

thousands
blanket
worker
crafting tools
process
skilled
possible

آلاف cloth
بطانية furniture
عامل creation
صنع الأدوات carefulness
عملية competition
ماهر ready
ممکن missing

المفردات اللغوية

قماش
أثاث
اختراع / إبداع
الحذر
مسابقة
مستعد
مفقود

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present		Past / P.P		Present		Past / P.P	
train	يتدرب	trained		require	يتطلب	required	
inspire	يلهم	inspired		cry	يبكي	cried	
change	يغير	changed		train	يتدرب	trained	
produce	ينتج	produced					

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
build	يبني / يبني	built
win	يفوز / يفوز	won
weave	ينسج / ينسج	woven
draw	يرسم / يرسم	drawn
sell	يبيع / يبيع	sold

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My shirt is made of
 a) fabric b) wood c) metal d) loom
- 2- When it's cold, I cover myself with a
 a) linen b) furniture c) blanket d) skill
- 3- We use to make cloth.
 a) possible b) worker c) wood d) threads
- 4- This machine special tools.
 a) won b) inspires c) requires d) cries
- 5- Using the loom requires
 a) carefulness b) happiness c) money d) furniture
- 6- The helps people make cloth.
 a) assemble b) invention c) blueprint d) loom



Main points

- Ancient Egyptians invented the loom.
 - They made clothes, blankets, and fabrics from linen.
 - They built fabric on looms by moving threads up and down.
 - This ancient invention still inspires modern machines.
 - Engineers or skilled workers drew a blueprint before assembling the loom.
 - Then, workers assembled the parts to make a strong loom.
- المصريون القدماء اخترعوا النول.
لقد صنعوا الملابس والبطاطين والقماش من الكتان.
لقد صنعوا القماش على النول بتحريك الخيوط أعلى وأسفل.
هذا الاختراع القديم مازال يلهم الماكينات الحديثة.
كان يرسم مهندسون أو عمال ماهرون مخطط قبل تجميع النول.
ثم جمع العمال الأجزاء لصنع نول قوي.

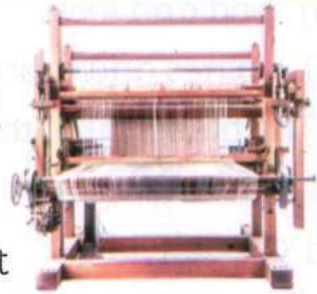
Reading: The Egyptian loom

النول المصري

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the loom, which helped them make clothes, blankets, and beautiful fabrics from linen. Before building a loom, an engineer or skilled worker, who was trained in crafting tools, would draw a blueprint to show the size, shape, and parts needed. Then, the workers would assemble the wooden pieces carefully so the loom, which needed to stand strong, could work well.



قبل آلاف السنين، ابتكر المصريون القدماء اختراعاً مذهلاً يُسمى النول، والذي ساعدهم في صنع الملابس والبطانيات والأقمشة الجميلة من الكتان. قبل بناء النول، كان مهندس أو عامل ماهر، مُدرَّب على صنع الأدوات، يرسم مخططاً يوضح الحجم والشكل والأجزاء اللازمة. بعد ذلك، كان العمال يجمعون القطع الخشبية بعناية ليعمل النول، الذي كان يجب أن يبقى قويًا ويعمل بشكل جيد.

Once it was ready, people used the loom to build fabric by moving threads up and down, a process that needed a lot of skills. The Egyptian loom made it possible to produce fine, colorful cloth which showed the creativity of ancient Egypt. Today, this ancient invention still inspires modern machines that make our clothes.

بمجرد أن يصبح جاهزاً، استخدم الناس النول لصنع القماش بتحريك الخيوط لأعلى ولأسفل، وهي عملية تتطلب العديد من المهارات. النول المصري جعل من الممكن إنتاج قماش فاخر وملون، مما أظهر إبداع مصر القديمة. واليوم، لا يزال هذا الاختراع القديم يُلهم الآلات الحديثة التي تصنع ملابسنا.

S.B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

اقرأ واكتب صح أو خطأ.

- 1- The loom helped the ancient Egyptians make clothes, blankets, and fabrics. ()
- 2- Only farmers used the loom to produce fabric. ()
- 3- Engineers drew a blueprint before assembling the loom. ()
- 4- The process of using the loom required a lot of skills. ()
- 5- Modern machines are inspired by the ancient Egyptian loom. ()

Tip!

put together = assemble

detailed plan = blueprint

cloth = fabric

creation = invention

S.B Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The ancient Egyptians used the loom to make
 - a) food and tools
 - b) houses and furniture
 - c) clothes and fabrics
 - d) jewelry and baskets
- 2- The blueprint of the loom was drawn by
 - a) a farmer
 - b) an engineer or skilled worker
 - c) a teacher
 - d) a young student
- 3- After making the blueprint, the workers
 - a) assembled the wooden parts carefully
 - b) threw the plan away
 - c) painted the loom in bright colors
 - d) sold the loom in the market

Language

Relative pronouns

ضمائر الوصل

- ضمائر الوصل هي كلمات تستخدم لربط جملتين معًا.

1. who (للعاقل) - الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي

تستخدم للتحدث عن الأشخاص.

- Ex:
- The teacher **who** teaches us is kind.
 - The worker **who** built the loom was skillful.

2. whose - الذي / التي

تستخدم نتحدث عن الملكية (يأتي بعدها اسم).

- Ex:
- The student **whose** invention won was happy.
 - The girl **whose** hair is brown is my sister.

3. which (لغير العاقل) - الذي / التي / الذين

تستخدم للتحدث عن الأشياء والحيوانات.

- Ex:
- The project **which** we build in class won the first prize.
 - The solar robot **which** has wheels is a cool gadget.

4. that - الذي / التي

تستخدم مع الأشياء والأفكار. تضيف معلومات هامة.

- Ex:
- The gadget **that** I bought broke.

Check your language

1 Complete the sentence using the correct relative pronouns.

أكمل الجمل الآتية.

(who – which – that – whose)

- 1- (S.B) The engineer built the loom was very clever.
- 2- (S.B) The museum we visited had old fabrics.
- 3- (S.B) The child toy is missing is crying.
- 4- (S.B) This is the tool they used to make clothes.
- 5- I met the worker built the loom.
- 6- This is the bag I bought.
- 7- This is the man car is modern.
- 8- The girl wears a shirt is clever.
- 9- This is Ali father is a doctor.

2 (S.B) Read each sentence, underline the wrong relative pronoun and correct it.

ضع خط تحت ضمائر الوصل الخطأ وصححها.

Ex: The engineer which built the loom was very smart.
The engineer who built the loom was very smart.

- 1- The toothbrush who we bought yesterday was very cheap.
.....
- 2- The engineer who invention won at the competition was very happy.
.....
- 3- The invention who changed the way people made clothes was the loom.
.....
- 4- The tool who the workers used was made of wood.
.....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- She bought a soft, colorful for her new dress.
a) fabric b) wood c) sand d) metal
- 2- Different colored can make a simple fabric look beautiful.
a) threads b) stones c) iron d) paper
- 3- This is the school the engineers built.
a) who b) which c) where d) whose
- 4- She bought a soft, white skirt for the party.
a) linen b) gold c) metal d) iron
- 5- The museum displayed an ancient wooden used for weaving years ago.
a) loom b) pot c) chair d) brush
- 6- This is my teacher teaches me English.
a) whose b) which c) where d) who

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(creativity – loom – threads – strong – skills)

Ancient Egyptians invented the loom. They used the loom to build fabric by moving (1) up and down, a process that needed a lot of (2) The Egyptian (3) made it possible to produce fine, colorful clothes which showed the (4) of ancient Egypt.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

The ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called papyrus. Papyrus was a very important type of ancient paper used for writing. This invention came from a plant near the Nile River. Workers pressed the layers of papyrus together to form a strong

fabric-like sheet. Once dry, the papyrus was ready for writing. This invention helped the Egyptians record their history and knowledge.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Papyrus was a kind of It was very important.
a) thread b) paper c) water d) stone
- 2- The underlined word "invention" means a new idea created for the time.
a) first b) second c) third d) fourth

B Answer the following.

- 3- What was papyrus used for?
.....
- 4- Why was this invention important?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- He - trained - in - tools - crafting - was .
.....
- 2- used - People - to - loom - fabrics - make - the .
.....
- 3- could - How - make - they - loom - the ?
.....
- 4- that - broke - The - gadget - bought - I .
.....
- 5- The - designed - engineer - who - robot - the - smart - is .
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- She showed me her new phone, (who) is very fast.
- 2- The doctor (which) helped the boy was very kind.
- 3- The artist (who) painting is on the screen the is talented.
- 4- This is the jacket..... (whose) I bought last week.
- 5- The old museum (who) we visited yesterday was amazing.
- 6- I met the girl (which) brother is a famous singer.
- 7- They helped the tourist (who) bags were lost at the airport.
- 8- This is the tool (then) they used to make clothes.

6 Punctuate the following.

the workers would assemble the wooden pieces

what is the loom made of

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The Egyptian loom".

(fabric – linen)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A) The Story of the First Clock

قصة أول ساعة حائط

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



measure

يقيس



time

وقت



gear

ترس



workshop

ورشة



pendulum

بندول



design

تصميم



accurate

دقيق

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

sand
inventor
clock
side
fascinating
exact
broken

رمل second
مخترع light
ساعة حائط long ago
جانب all over
مذهل Europe
مضبوط / مطابق correct
مكسور / معطل accurately

ثانية
ضوء
منذ وقت طويل
كل انحاء
أوروبا
صحيح
بدقة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present		Past / P.P		Present		Past / P.P	
study	يدرس	studied		design	يصمم	designed	
store	يخزن	stored		move	يتحرك	moved	

Irregular verbs

Present		Past		P.P	
keep	يحافظ	kept		kept	
spin	يدور / يلف	spun / span		spun / span	

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

A gear : is a part of a machine that helps parts move together

الترس : هو جزء من آلة يساعد الأجزاء في التحرك معًا

A pendulum : is a piece that moves from side to side to keep time

البندول : هو قطعة تتحرك من جانب إلى جانب لتحفظ الوقت

Accurate : means correct and exact

دقيق : تغنى صحيح ومضبوط

Check your Vocab.

اقرأ وأكمل. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

- He creates new machines. He is a great
a) teacher b) doctor c) inventor d) worker
- The help the parts of the machine move.
a) pendulum b) gears c) sand d) side
- We have a clock that has a to keep time.
a) design b) carpet c) wheel d) pendulum
- We use the ruler to
a) figure b) measure c) spin d) store
- The car doesn't work, it's
a) accurate b) exact c) broken d) correct



Main points

- Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time.
- منذ وقت طويل، استخدم الناس الشمس والرمل لإخبار الوقت.
- Later, clever inventors built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum.
- فيما بعد مخترعون ماهرون بنوا أول ساعة تستخدم التروس والبندول.
- The pendulum keeps time more accurately.
- البندول يساعد على الحفاظ على الوقت بشكل أكثر دقة.
- Then, an engineer designed a clock that could measure every second.
- ثم صمم مهندس ساعة يمكنها قياس كل ثانية.
- The clock had a new design and became famous all over Europe.
- كان للساعة تصميم جديد و أصبحت مشهور في كل أنحاء أوروبا.

Reading

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. Later, clever inventors built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum.



The pendulum, which moved slowly from side to side, helped the clock keep time more accurately. One engineer, who studied how things move, designed a clock that could measure every second. The workshop where he worked was full of tools and small gears. The clock, whose design was new and exciting, became famous all over Europe. It was one of the fascinating inventions that changed how people lived and worked every day.

منذ زمن بعيد، استخدم الناس الشمس والرمل لتحديد الوقت. لاحقاً، بنى مخترعون ماهرون أول ساعة حائط تعمل بالتروس والبندول. البندول الذي يتحرك ببطء من جانب إلى آخر يساعد الساعة على ضبط الوقت بدقة أكبر. صمم مهندس والذي درس حركة الأشياء، ساعة يمكنها قياس كل ثانية. كانت الورشة التي عمل فيها مليئة بالأدوات والتروس الصغيرة الساعة التي كان تصميمها جديد ومثير، أصبحت مشهورة في جميع أنحاء أوروبا. كانت واحدة من الاختراعات الرائعة التي غيّرت الطريقة التي عاش وعمل بها الناس كل يوم.

Answer the following questions.

أجب الأسئلة الآتية.

1- What did people use to measure time long ago?

.....

2- How did the pendulum help the clock work more accurately?

.....

3- Why was the new clock an important invention?

.....

Prefix

البادئة

- البادئة هي جزء صغير (حروف) تضاف في بداية الكلمة وتغير معنى الكلمة وأحياناً تغير صوتها عند نطقها.

1. Prefix: (re-) = again or back

- البادئة (re-) تعني مرة أخرى أو إعادة.

rebuild	يعيد بناء	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
recycle	يعيد تدوير	return	يعود
reread	يعيد قراءة	restart	يعيد تشغيل

Tip!



When you say re-, make it sound like "ree" before a strong syllable (like in rebuild), but like "ri" before weak ones (like return).

2. Prefix: (un-) = not or the opposite of

- البادئة (un) تعني غير أو عكس.

unlucky	غير محظوظ	unkind	غير عطوف
unhappy	غير سعيد	unsafe	غير آمن
unfair	غير عادل	unlock	يفتح (قفل)

Tip!



The stress usually stays on the main word, not on the prefix.

التشديد عادة يكون على الكلمة الأساسية وليس على البادئة.

Example: unHAPpy → stress on HAP, not UN.

Exercises

Lesson 3

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Long ago, people used the moon and sand to tell the time. ()
2. Clever inventors built the first clock that used gears and pendulum. ()
3. The pendulum moved quickly from side to side. ()
4. One engineer, who studied how things move, designed a clock. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The old clock on the wall stopped because its
stopped moving.
a) design b) seat c) pendulum d) wheel
- 2- The bike won't move if you don't change the
a) gear b) vegetables c) battery d) mirror
- 3- If something is accurate, it is correct and
a) exact b) broken c) light d) wrong
- 4- always have gears to work properly.
a) Meals b) Chairs c) Machines d) Seconds
- 5- We can measure the time with
a) designs b) seconds c) inventors d) sides

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(fruits - grow - build - sun - proud)

Ancient Egyptians were very clever at using nature. They used the
(1) and sand to measure time. They also used the Nile to
(2) many crops like vegetables and (3) They
used stones to build temples. We are very (4) to be Egyptians.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Long ago, people watched the sky to know the time of day and the weather. Later, inventors built a weather machine with special gears and a moving pendulum. The pendulum helped the machine give more accurate information. A young engineer designed a device to measure wind speed and temperature. His simple design became very useful because it helped people plan their day and understand the weather better. The new machine worked well even in strong wind. People in many cities started using it because it saved their time.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Inventors built a small machine.
 a) sea b) weather c) sand d) air
- 2- The underlined word 'accurate' means something is and exact.
 a) wrong b) incorrect c) correct d) bad

B Answer the following.

- 3- How did the pendulum help the machine?

- 4- What did a young engineer design?

- 5- Why did people start to use the machine?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- It - one - was - of - inventions - fascinating - the .

- 2- helped - The - pendulum - the - accurately - time - keep - clock .

3- Is - Important - It - measure - to - correctly - the time .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- They will (build) the old bridge.
- 2- He decided to (write) the story with a new ending.
- 3- It is important to (cycle) glass and paper.
- 4- We visited the pyramids (who) were built by Egyptians.
- 5- The team was (happy) because they lost the game.
- 6- We met my friend (which) father is our teacher.
- 7- It's (safe) to walk alone at night.
- 8- The Inventor (which) we interviewed shared many helpful tips.

7 Punctuate the following.

I used my key to unlock the door

.....
why was the new clock an important invention
.....

**8 Write paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:
"The first clock".
(gears - pendulum)**

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

Aswan Dam	سد أسوان	crops	محاصيل
land	أرض	village	قرية
river	نهر	supply	إمداد
structure	بناء	building	مبنى
southern Egypt	جنوب مصر	future	مستقبل
factories	مصانع	free	مجاني
concrete	خرسانة	field	حقل
farm	مزرعة	automatically	آلياً
farming	زراعة	materials	مواد
farmer	مزارع / فلاح	mistake	خطأ
powerful	قوي / فعال	connection	اتصال

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
happen يحدث	happened	generate يولد / ينتج	generated
flood يفيض / يغمر	flooded	protect يحمي	protected
benefit يفيد / يستفيد	benefited	provide يمد / يزود	provided
block يحجز / يمنع	blocked	improve يحسن / يطور	improved
discover يكتشف	discovered	change يغير	changed

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
grow يزرع	grew	grown

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- The is a structure that stops floods.
a) school b) factory c) dam d) farm
- 2- People use stone and to build dams.
a) crops b) future c) field d) concrete
- 3- The Nile Egypt with water.
a) provides b) blocks c) grow d) discover
- 4- The dam gives Egypt a clean of electricity.
a) farm b) field c) supply d) land
- 5- Aswan is in Egypt. It's a beautiful city.
a) eastern b) western c) northern d) southern
- 6- The machine works Don't press any button.
a) automatically b) mistake c) free d) field



Main points

- The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt.
- سد أسوان هو بناء ضخم في جنوب مصر.
- It stops the Nile from flooding and generates energy.
- إنه يمنع النيل من الفيضان ويولد طاقة.
- It is made of stone and concrete.
- إنه مصنوع من الحجارة والخرسانة.
- It keeps water for growing crops all year.
- إنه يحفظ الماء لزراعة المحاصيل طوال العام.

Reading : A Visit to Aswan Dam

زيارة لسد أسوان

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرا.

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt that helps people every day. It was built by engineers who wanted to stop the Nile from flooding and to generate powerful energy for homes and factories. The dam, which is made of stone and concrete, also keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year. It helps protect villages that are near the river and gives Egypt a clean supply of electricity. The people who live around the dam benefit from its energy and water. The Aswan Dam is one of the great modern buildings that changed Egypt's future.

سد أسوان بناءً ضخماً في جنوب مصر يساعد الناس كل يوم. بُني بواسطة مهندسون أرادوا منع فيضان النيل وتوليد طاقة قوية للمنازل والمصانع. السد المصنوع من الحجر والخرسانة حافظ أيضاً على المياه التي يستخدمها المزارعون لزراعة المحاصيل على مدار العام. ويساعد على حماية القرى القريبة من النهر. ويوفر لمصر مصدراً نظيفاً للكهرباء. الناس الذين يعيشون حول السد يستفيدوا من طاقته ومياهه. يُعدّ سد أسوان أحد المباني الحديثة العظيمة التي غيّرت مستقبل مصر.

S.B Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1- How does the dam help farmers?
 - a) It gives them free machines.
 - b) It stops animals from eating crops.
 - c) It keeps water for growing crops all year.
 - d) It builds new fields automatically.
- 2- What does the dam provide for homes and factories?
 - a) clean water only
 - b) electricity only
 - c) both water and powerful energy
 - d) food and electricity

- 3- People benefit from the dam when they
- get water and energy from it
 - move away from it
 - block the river
 - stop farming

S.B Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

- 1- What materials were used to build the Aswan Dam?
.....
- 2- Which villages are protected by the dam?
.....

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in northern Egypt. ()
- It was built by teachers to stop the Nile from flooding. ()
- The dam was made of stone and concrete. ()
- It also keeps water for farmers to grow crops. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We visited the Dam in Aswan. It controls the flood.
a) High b) bridge c) museum d) lake
- Our house has walls. It's very strong.
a) plastic b) paper c) concrete d) soft
- The Aswan Dam helps provide a regular of water for farms.
a) lesson b) supply c) desert d) building
- The dam helps protect Egypt from
a) raining b) shining c) flooding d) walking
- Engineers built the dam to villages along the Nile.
a) protect b) protects c) protecting d) protected

6- The dam people every day.

- a) help b) helps c) helping d) helped

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Aswan High Dam is a very big wall built across the Nile River in Egypt. It is a very strong structure made of hard rocks and concrete. The main goal was to stop the river from flooding the land every year. Now, the dam holds a huge amount of fresh water in a man-made lake called Lake Nasser. This water is very important because it helps farmers grow food all year, even when the river is low. Also, the dam uses the moving water to create electricity for houses and many factories. Today, the Dam is an important tourist attraction that shows the world a great success of Egyptian builders.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The dam is made of hard and concrete.

- a) plastic b) paper c) rocks d) wood

2- The main goal of the High Dam is to stop the river from

- a) raining b) moving c) walking d) flooding

B Answer the following.

3- What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4- Where is the Aswan Dam?

.....

5- Why is the water in Lake Nasser very important?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- help - How - the - farmers - does - dam ?

.....

2- The - Dam - is - Aswan - a - modern - building - great .

3- can - the dam - help - How - people - farms - and ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- The people (which) live around the dam benefit from its energy and water.

2- It helps protect villages (who) are near the river.

3- The dam also keeps water (this) farmers use to grow crops all year.

6 Punctuate the following.

the dam helps people every day

what does the dam provide for homes and factories

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:
"The Aswan Dam".
(flooding – protect)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Important vocabulary

invention	اختراع	machine	آلة
gadgets	أدوات / أجهزة	robot	إنسان آلي
blueprint	تصميم أولي / مخطط	solar power	طاقة شمسية
tools	أدوات	battery	بطارية
part	جزء	detailed	مفصل
product	منتج	effective	فعال
method	طريقة	fabric	قماش
device	جهاز	threads	خيوط
blanket	بطانية	linen	كتان
process	عملية	loom	نول
carefulness	الحذر	inventor	مخترع
gear	ترس	exact	مضبوط
pendulum	بندول	broken	معطل
accurate	دقيق	second	ثانية
dam	سد	concrete	خرسانة
structure	بناء	farming	الزراعة
telescope	تليسكوب	supply	إمداد

Important verbs

Regular verbs

place (d)	يضع	ignore (d)	يتجاهل
inspire (d)	يلهم	require (d)	يتطلب
design (ed)	يصمم	benefit (ed)	يفيد
generate (d)	يولد	provide (d)	يمد / يزود

Important paragraphs**The Egyptian loom**

The loom is an amazing Egyptian invention. The Ancient Egyptians created it thousands of years ago. It helped them make clothes, blankets, and beautiful fabrics from linen. They used the loom to build fabric by moving threads up and down. The loom showed the creativity of ancient Egypt. This ancient invention still inspires modern machines that make our clothes.

The first clock

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to measure time. Later, inventors created clocks with gears and pendulum to be more accurate. Then, one engineer built a clock that could measure every second. It was new and exciting. It became famous all over Europe.

The Aswan Dam

The Aswan Dam is in southern Egypt. It controls the Nile floods. It provides electricity and stores water for farming. It was built from stone and concrete. The dam keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year. It protects nearby villages and gives Egypt a clean supply of electricity. This huge structure changed Egypt's future.

A brilliant engineer

A talented engineer made a great invention. He made a solar robot kit. The first step was designing a detailed blueprint. He assembled the small parts using the right tools. The robot runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun. He can easily improve it if something isn't working. It's a very important invention.

Relative pronouns

ضمائر الوصل

- ضمائر الوصل تستخدم لربط جملتين معًا.

1. who



- (للعاقل)

2. whose



- للملكية

3. which



- (لغير العاقل)

4. that

- لإضافة معلومات لغير العاقل والأفكار

S.B Choose the correct relative pronouns:

- 1- The scientist (**which** - **who**) discovered the new gadget is very famous.
- 2- The project (**whose** - **which**) we built in class won the first prize.
- 3- The engineer (**whose** - **that**) ideas helped improve the robot visited our school.
- 4- The new robot (**who** - **which**) students made in the workshop worked perfectly.
- 5- The inventor (**which** - **who**) we interviewed shared many helpful tips.

Top students

- Find the mistakes and write the correct word.

- 1- The teacher which teaches us is my neighbor. (.....)
- 2- The shop who sells clothes is closed today. (.....)
- 3- The robot who wires were broken was hers. (.....)
- 4- The student which grades were good went to the gallery. (.....)
- 5- The school gave prizes to the student whose has a talent. (.....)

General Test on unit 2

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. People used the loom to build fabric by moving wheels up and down. ()
2. The Egyptian loom made it possible to produce fine, colorful cloth. ()
3. The loom showed the creativity of ancient Egypt. ()
4. This ancient invention still inspires old machines that make our clothes. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Before building the robot, the team studied the carefully.
 a) blueprint b) sculpture c) loom d) mural
- 2- The woman lives next door is a nurse.
 a) whose b) which c) what d) who
- 3- Make sure your bike work well to be safe.
 a) loom b) canvas c) gears d) frame
- 4- I know the man car is parked outside.
 a) who b) whose c) where d) which

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(loom - invention - explore - gadget - blueprint)

The talented student, Tom, showed us his latest invention. It was a tiny flying (1) He explained that he first drew a detailed (2) before building it. The little machine helps scientists (3) small caves safely. Tom hopes his (4) will help people learn new things every day!

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Long ago, it was hard to measure the exact time. People needed a way to keep time more accurate. Then, clever engineers started to make the first mechanical clocks. The first important clock part was the pendulum. The pendulum moves from side to side to keep the movement regularly. Inside the clock, small gear wheels move together. The way all the parts are put together is the clock's design. Good clock design helps the clock keep very accurate time. This helps us measure minutes and seconds correctly.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Long ago, it was hard to measure the exact
 a) water b) air c) time d) food
- 2- The underlined word "gear" is a part of a machine that helps parts move
 a) alone b) together c) short d) slow

B Answer the following.

- 3- What was the first important clock part?

- 4- What was inside the clock?

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- The - Dam - Aswan - huge - is - structure - a - in - Egypt .

- 2- is - invention - Why - new - the - clock - important - an ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- The scientist (where) invented the new gadget is very famous.
- 2- After his long journey, he was finally able to (turn) home.

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

The ancient egyptians created an amazing invention

.....

what steps did you follow

.....

**8 Write a text of sixty (60) words using the words below:
"The Egyptian loom".**

(structure – supply)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test on unit 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(robot - engineer - sun - blueprint - power - gadget)

Interviewer : Welcome back! Today, We have a talented young (1) here with an amazing invention- the solar robot (2) Can you tell us more about the gadget?

Young engineer: I want to create a simple gadget that feels like a small machine. The first step was designing a detailed (3)

Interviewer : Wow! How do you use it?

Young engineer: First, you assemble the small parts using tools. The robot runs on solar (4), so the wheels move when you place it in the (5)

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We need to (paint) the wall. It's so old painting.
- 2- The car (who) color is red runs on electricity.
- 3- The teacher (which) helps me is smart.
- 4- The house (this) Ali likes is wide.
- 5- I met my friend (which) mother is our headteacher.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- We use the to make clothes and blankets.
a) carpet b) loom c) temple d) TV
- 2- You should the wooden pieces carefully to stand strong.
a) assemble b) watch c) eat d) push

- 3- The High Dam is a huge in Aswan.
 a) school b) water c) structure d) road
- 4- The people live near the dam from its energy.
 a) hate b) pollute c) benefit d) flood
- 5- The is a great modern building.
 a) temple b) pyramid c) gate d) High Dam
- 6- The doctor helped us is kind.
 a) who b) when c) which d) whose
- 7- I saw Ali father is our teacher.
 a) when b) where c) who d) whose
- 8- The pen I bought yesterday is very beautiful.
 a) this b) which c) where d) who
- 9- That is the car is my favorite.
 a) which b) whose c) who d) where
- 10- The child mother is there is crying.
 a) who b) which c) where d) whose

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1- use - repaint - restart - rewrite | () |
| 2- who - whose - which - how | () |
| 3- unluckily - unkind - unlock - happy | () |
| 4- design - measure - build - pendulum | () |
| 5- summer - north - west - east | () |

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last Friday, I went with my friend Mohammed to visit the High Dam. Mohammed was amazed when he saw it. It is very huge. The High Dam saves Egypt from flooding. It produces energy to light houses and factories. After we finished, we went to the restaurant to have lunch. We ate delicious fish. The fish we ate was from Lake Nasser. It was a great day.

A Read and put (T) or (F).

- 1- They went to the High Dam last Sunday. ()
- 2- The High Dam is very huge. ()
- 3- It produces energy to light houses. ()

B Choose the correct answer.

- 4- After the visit, they went to the
 a) house b) cafe c) restaurant d) school
- 5- The dam protects Egypt from
 a) fire b) electricity c) flooding d) sandstorm

6 Write a paragraph of five sentences using the words below:

"The loom".

(blueprint - clothes - wooden - amazing - ancient Egyptians)

Hidden Gems of Egypt

كنوز مصر المخفية

Unit Three



Objectives

Vocabulary :

burial, archaeologist, mummy, discover, chamber, mystery, temple, ruler, monument, border, restore, tour guide, craftsman, design, pattern

Language :

Present Perfect (Affirmative – Negative – Interrogative)

Life Skills :

Research & Information Gathering

Values :

- Respect for Heritage & Culture

Integrated Learning Activities:

Design a travel brochure

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



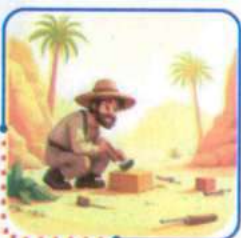
burial site
موقع دفن / مقبرة



discovery
اكتشاف



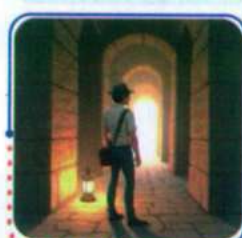
mummy
مومياء



archaeologist
عالم آثار



chamber
غرفة جنائزية



mystery
لغز

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

tomb
corridor
researcher
heritage
visitors

مقبرة
ممر
باحث
تراث
زوار

scientist
smell
priest
walls
inside

عالم
رائحة
كاهن
جدران
داخل

carvings
scenes
style
history
secret

نقوش / منحوتات
مناظر / مشاهد
أسلوب / طراز
تاريخ
سر

Adjectives

الصفات

ancient
mysterious
famous
underground
preserved
Greek
including

أثري / قديم
غامض
مشهور
تحت الأرض
محفوظ
يوناني
متضمنة

wonderful
unforgettable
rich
mummified
artistic
enchanting

رائع
لا تُنسى
غني / ثري
محنط
فني
ساحر / خلاب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
amaze	يدهش	amazed	استمر
fill	يملأ	filled	يبهر / يسحر
create	ينشئ	created	يقع
		locate	located

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
lie	يقع	lay
stand	يقف / يقف	stood
show	يعرض	showed / shown

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

in the middle of	في وسط	feel proud of	يشعر بالفخر بـ
covered with	مغطى بـ	walk through	يمشي عبر
hundreds of	مئات من	famous for	مشهور بـ
traveled back in time			سافر عبر الزمان إلى الماضي

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

An archaeologist studies ancient places and old objects.

عالم الآثار يدرس الأماكن الأثرية والأشياء القديمة.

A mummy is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years.

المومياء هي جسد تم حفظه لآلاف السنين.

A chamber is a special room inside a tomb.

الغرفة الجنائزية هي غرفة خاصة داخل المقبرة.

Check your Vocab.

S.B

Read and complete the text using words from the box.

(burial – archaeologist – mummy – discovery – chamber)

- 1- An studies ancient places and old objects.
- 2- A is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years.
- 3- A is a special room inside a tomb.
- 4- A new of ancient tombs made scientists very excited.
- 5- Tuna el-Gebel is a site filled with history and secrets.



Main points

- Tuna el-Gebel is a burial site in the desert near Minya.
- تونة الجبل هي موقع دفن في الصحراء يقع بالقرب من المنيا.
- It's famous for underground chambers and long corridors filled with ancient art.
- الموقع مشهور بالغرف الأرضية و الممرات الطويلة المليئة بالفن القديم.
- Archaeologists found hundreds of animals and birds mummies.
- وجد علماء الآثار مئات من مومياوات الحيوانات والطيور.
- At the center lies the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest from over 2000 years ago.
- في المنتصف تقع مقبرة بيتوزيريس وهو كاهن كبير منذ أكثر من ٢٠٠٠ عام.
- His tomb walls show carvings and colorful scenes mixing Egyptian and Greek styles.
- حوائط مقبرته تعرض نقوش ومشاهد ملونة تمزج الطراز المصري باليوناني.
- The quiet desert, carvings, and the smell of history make the place unforgettable.
- الصحراء الهادئة والنقوش وعبق التاريخ يجعل المكان لا يُنسى.
- The chambers and mummies make us feel proud of our heritage.
- الغرف الجنائزية والمومياوات تجعلنا نشعر بالفخر بتراثنا.

Reading: Tuna el-Gebel

- Look, listen, and read.

انظر واستمع ثم اقرأ.

In the desert near Minya lies Tuna el-Gebel, a mysterious burial site that has amazed archaeologists for years. The area is famous for its underground chambers and long corridors filled with ancient art. Researchers made many exciting discoveries, including hundreds of mummies of animals, especially preserved birds.



في الصحراء القريبة من المنيا، تقع تونة الجبل، وهي مقبرة غامضة أذهلت علماء الآثار لسنوات. المنطقة مشهورة بغرفها الجنائزية الموجودة تحت الأرض وممراتها الطويلة المليئة بالفنون القديمة. وقد قام الباحثون بالعديد من الاكتشافات المثيرة، بما في ذلك مئات من مومياوات الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور المحفوظة.

In the middle of the site stands the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest who lived more than two thousand years ago. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes that show both Egyptian and Greek styles. The mystery of how ancient Egyptians created such wonderful tombs and preserved animals continues to fascinate visitors.

وفي وسط الموقع، تقع مقبرة بتوزوريس، الكاهن الأكبر الذي عاش منذ أكثر من ألفي عام. جدران مقبرته مغطاة بنقوش جميلة ومشاهد ملونة تظهر الطرازين المصري واليوناني. لغز كيفية بناء المصريين القدماء لهذه المقابر الرائعة وحفظ الحيوانات يستمر في إبهار الزوار.

Walking through Tuna el-Gebel, people feel like they have traveled back in time. The quiet desert, the carvings, and the smell of history make the place unforgettable. Seeing these ancient burial chambers and mummies helps every Egyptian feel proud of their country's rich heritage.

عند التجول في تونة الجبل، يشعر الناس وكأنهم سافروا عبر الزمن. الصحراء الهادئة والنقوش وعبق التاريخ يجعلان المكان لا يُنسى. إن رؤية غرف الدفن والمومياوات القديمة تساعد كل مصري أن يشعر بالفخر بتراث بلده الغني.

S.B Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

اقرأ واكتب صح أم خطأ.

- 1- Tuna el-Gebel is a famous burial site located near Minya. ()
- 2- Archaeologists discovered hundreds of preserved animals at the site. ()
- 3- The tomb of Petosiris shows only Egyptian artistic styles. ()
- 4- The chambers and carvings at Tuna el-Gebel are still mysterious to researchers. ()
- 5- Visiting Tuna el-Gebel can help Egyptians feel proud of their heritage. ()

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- The school trip was on Friday. ()
- 2- They saw chambers and mummies. ()
- 3- Egyptians feel proud of their heritage. ()
- 4- They came back at 8 o'clock. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Tuna el-Gebel is a mysterious burial near Minya.
a) park b) site c) museum d) desert
- 2- A is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years.
a) mummy b) site c) doctor d) chamber
- 3- Egyptians are proud of their country's rich
a) schools b) hospitals c) heritage d) cinemas
- 4- The tombs walls covered with beautiful carvings and colorful senses.
a) are b) is c) does d) did

5- Ancient Egyptians wonderful tombs.

- a) create b) creates c) created d) creating

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(chambers – fascinated – mysterious – heritage – mummified)

Ancient Egyptians were very clever. The burial sites they built were

(1)..... They built some of them with underground (2)..... beside the tombs. They (3)..... many animals and birds besides kings, queens, and important people. Most tombs have special carvings and scenes that tell stories about history. We should be proud of Egypt's (4).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, I had an unforgettable trip with my family. We went to an ancient site near Minya. It's in the desert, but it is wonderful. There are many underground chambers and long corridors. The guide told us that archaeologists discovered hundreds of preserved animals and birds at the site. We also saw the tomb of a high priest called Petosiris. The tomb walls are decorated with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes. They had both Egyptian and Greek styles. The place is quiet and has a smell of history. I am proud that Egypt has this mysterious burial site.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- Tuna el-Gebel is a mysterious site.

- a) chamber b) burial c) artistic d) mummified

2- The underlined word "preserved" means

- a) mummified b) lay c) stood d) filled

B Answer the following questions.

3- How are the walls in the tomb?

.....

4- Who was Petosiris?

.....

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

Unit 3

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Petosiris (lives) more than 2000 years ago.
- 2- The area (are) famous for its underground chambers.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- is - inside - a - special - A chamber - room - a tomb .
.....
- 2- studies - places - objects - ancient - old - An archaeologist - and .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

tuna el-Gebel is very amazing

.....

we went on a trip to the desert

.....

8 Write an email of SIXTY (60) words to your friend Ali. Your email address is rami@gmail.com. His email address is ali2020@gmail.com.

"Tuna el-Gebel".
(mummies - chamber)

New Message
— ✉ ×

To :

Subject :

.....,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



temple

معبد



ruler

حاكم



restore

يرمم



border

حد



monument

أثر

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

Nubia	النوبة	water level	مستوى المياه
southern	جنوبي	expert	خبير
symbol of	رمز لـ	Toth / Thoth	تحوت (إله الحكمة)
god	إله	tourists	سياح
wisdom	حكمة	gates	بوابات
emperor	إمبراطور	feeling	شعور / إحساس
culture	ثقافة	soldiers	جنود
traditions	تقاليد	bridge	كوبري
softly	برفق / بهدوء	tell stories	يحكي قصص
location	موقع	close to	بالقرب من
company	شركة	has stood for	ظل قائماً لـ ..

Adjectives

الصفات

busy = crowded	مزدحم	peaceful	آمن / هادئ	Roman	روماني
rising	متزايد	magical	ساحر / سحري	higher	أعلى

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present		Past / P.P		Present		Past / P.P	
add	يضيف	added		restore	يرمم	restored	
respect	يحترم	respected		move	ينقل / يحرك	moved	
raise	يرفع / يزيد	raised		expand	يوسع	expanded	
develop	يطور	developed		decorate	يزين	decorated	

Irregular verbs

Present		Past		P.P	
know	يعرف	knew		known	
shine	تشرق	shone		shone	
write	يكتب	wrote		written	

Check your Vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- Egyptian have worked carefully to restore the temple.
a) tourists b) gods c) experts d) bridges
- 2- The sunlight softly on the temple walls.
a) works b) shines c) develops d) designs
- 3- The temple lies near Egypt's southern with Sudan.
a) culture b) symbol c) tourist d) border
- 4- The was the most important person in the country.
a) ruler b) expert c) company d) dam

5 - The building is damaged, so we will it.

- a) shine b) raise c) add d) restore

6 - The pyramids and temples are

- a) emperors b) tourists c) monuments d) stories

7 - Temples were built for ancient like Thoth.

- a) traditions b) goods c) good d) gods



Main points

- The Temple of Dakka is an ancient monument that has stood for thousands of years in Nubia.

- معبد الدكة هو أثر قديم ظل قائماً لآلاف السنين في النوبة.

- It's a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history.

- انه رمز لتاريخ مصر الطويل والمشرق.

- Many rulers have designed temples for ancient gods like Toth, the god of wisdom.

- كثير من الحكام صمموا المعابد للآلهة القديمة مثل تحوت، إله الحكمة.

- Greek and Roman emperors have added new walls and carvings to the temple.

- الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومانيون أضافوا جدران جديدة ونقوش للمعبد.

- Egyptian experts have restored the temple and moved every stone to higher ground after the High Dam raised water level.

- الخبراء المصريون رمموا المعبد ونقلوا كل حجر إلى أرض أعلى بعدما رفع السد العالي مستوى المياه.

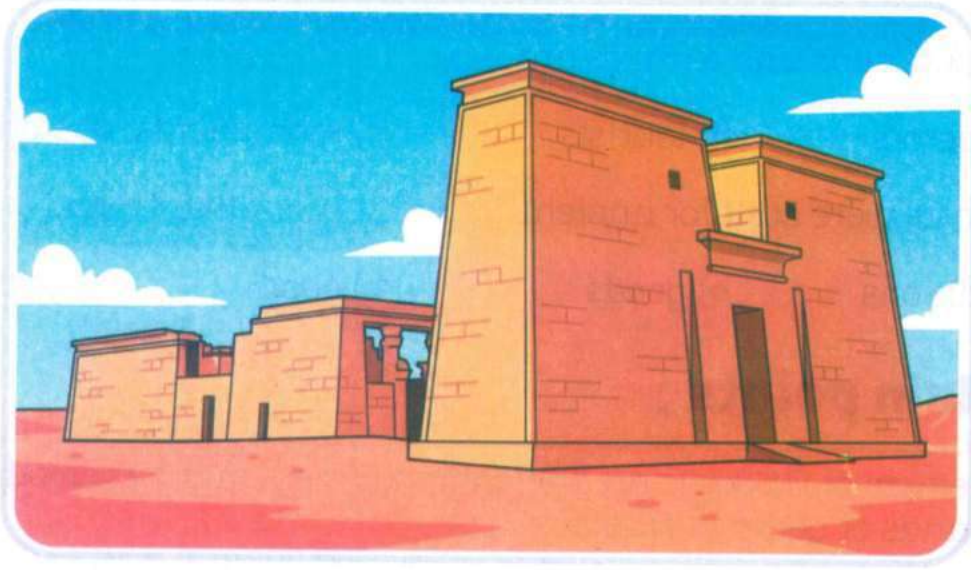
- Visitors feel proud of how Egypt has protected its history and treasures.

- الزوار يشعروا بالفخر كيف حمت مصر تاريخها وكنوزها.

Reading: The Temple of Dakka

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Far from Egypt's busy cities, the Temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years in Nubia, near Egypt's southern border. This ancient monument has become a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history. Many rulers have designed temples for ancient gods like Toth, the god of wisdom.

بعيداً عن مدن مصر المزدحمة، ظل معبد الدكة شامخاً لآلاف السنين في النوبة، قرب الحدود الجنوبية لمصر. أصبح هذا الأثر العريق رمزاً لتاريخ مصر الطويل و العريق. العديد من الحكام صمموا معابد لآلهة قديمة، مثل تحوت، إله الحكمة.

Over time, Greek and Roman emperors have added new walls and carvings, showing how different cultures have respected Egypt's traditions. The temple once stood close to the River Nile, but when the High Dam raised the water level, Egyptian experts have worked carefully to restore it and move every stone to higher ground.

ومع مرور الزمن، أضاف الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومان جدراناً ونقوش جديدة، مما يُظهر مدى احترام الثقافات المختلفة لتقاليد مصر. كان المعبد سابقاً قائماً على ضفاف نهر النيل، ولكن عندما رفع السد العالي منسوب المياه، عمل الخبراء المصريون بحرص لترميمه ونقل كل حجر إلى أرض أكثر ارتفاعاً.

Today, visitors walk through its tall gates and watch the amazing carvings that tell stories of ancient gods and kings. The sunlight shines softly on its walls, and the quiet desert around the temple creates a peaceful, magical feeling. Everyone who has visited Dakka feels proud of how Egypt has protected its history and treasures.

اليوم، يمر الزوار عبر بواباته الطويلة ويشاهدون النقوش الرائعة التي تروي قصص الآلهة والملوك القدماء. تشرق أشعة الشمس برقة على جدرانه، وتضفي الصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بالمعبد شعوراً بالسكينة والسحر. كل من زار الدكة يشعر بالفخر لكيفية حماية مصر لتاريخها وكنوزها.

S.B 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- What has made the Temple of Dakka an important monument?
 - a) its modern design
 - b) its long history and carvings
 - c) its location in a city
 - d) its use as a museum
- 2- Who has helped expand and decorate the temple?
 - a) Greek and Roman emperors
 - b) modern tourists
 - c) Nubian farmers
 - d) Egyptian soldiers
- 3- What has protected the temple from the rising Nile waters?
 - a) building of new walls
 - b) experts moving it to higher ground
 - c) covering it with sand
 - d) building houses around it

S.B 2. Read and write (T) true or (F) false. اقرأ واكتب صح أم خطأ.

- 1- The Temple of Dakka has stood in Nubia for thousands of years. ()
- 2- Only Egyptian rulers have helped design the temple. ()
- 3- Experts have restored and moved the temple to protect it from the Nile's rising waters. ()
- 4- Visitors have found the temple noisy and crowded with tourists. ()
- 5- People like the ancient carvings and stories of gods and kings. ()

Language

Present perfect tense

زمن المضارع التام

usage

الاستخدام

- للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة إلى الآن.
- للتعبير عن أشياء حدثت مؤخرًا ويمكن رؤية آثارها أو نتائجها اليوم.

+ Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

have / has + P.P

Subject

I, We, They, You, plural اسم جمع +

He, She, It, singular, اسم مفرد +

Auxiliary

الفعل المساعد

have

has

verb

past participle (P.P)

التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex: - I **have** done a project.

- Experts **have** restored the temple.
- The temple **has** become a symbol of Egypt's history.

- Negative النفي

haven't / hasn't + P.P

Subject

I, We, They, You, plural +

He, She, It, singular +

Auxiliary

الفعل المساعد

haven't

hasn't

verb

P.P

Ex: - We **haven't** finished homework.

- She **hasn't** known about the temple.
- I **haven't** visited the temple.

Question السؤال

Yes or No question السؤال بهل

Auxiliary		Subject		verb
Have	+	I, we, they, you	+	P.P?
Has	+	he, she, it		

Ex: Has he worked hard in the company?

- Yes, he **has**.
- No, he **hasn't**.

Ex: Have you liked the carvings?

- Yes, I **have**.
- No, I **haven't**.

Wh-question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Wh-word		Auxiliary		Subject		verb
What / Where	+	have	+	I, we, they, you	+	P.P?
How long	+	has	+	he, she, it		

Ex: What has Ali played at the club?

- Ali has played football.

Check your language.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 - Visitors visited the temple.

- a) has b) have c) does d) do

2 - The engineer built the bridge.

- a) were b) have c) was d) has

- 3- I watched the movie.
a) hasn't b) doesn't c) haven't d) don't
- 4- Experts have the temple.
a) restore b) restores c) restored d) restoring
- 5- you visited the Dakka Temple?
a) Has b) Have c) Is d) Does
- 6- They have the secret chamber.
a) find b) finding c) finds d) found
- 7- How long the temple of Dakka stood?
a) has b) have c) do d) does
- 8- Egyptian rulers designed temples for gods.
a) has b) have c) did d) is
- 9- Who has to the Pyramids?
a) go b) went c) gone d) going
- 10- Ola cooked lunch.
a) hasn't b) haven't c) didn't d) don't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- The Temple of Dakka has (stand) in Nubia.
- 2- Experts (has) worked hard to restore the temple.
- 3- They have (writes) on the wall.
- 4- (Have) she studied English?
- 5- Ola (haven't) done homework.
- 6- Visitors have (find) the temple great.
- 7- What has (make) the temple of Dakka an important monument?
- 8- I (has) been to Cairo for a long time.
- 9- We (not have) gone to the temple.
- 10- (Has) the visitors enjoyed their time?

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- Experts - worked - carefully - have .
- 2- its - has - treasures - Egypt - protected - and - history .
- 3- emperors - walls - have - new - added - Roman .
- 4- done - Omar - his - homework - hasn't .
- 5- carvings - Have - the - liked - visitors - the walls - on ?

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The Temple of Dakka is an ancient in Nubia.
a) gate b) monument c) park d) god
- 2- Egyptian experts worked carefully to restore the temple.
a) have b) has c) are d) were
- 3- Egyptians have their history and treasures.
a) protecting b) protects c) protect d) protected
- 4- Many have designed temples for ancient gods.
a) teachers b) doctors c) nurses d) rulers
- 5- The sunlight shines softly on the temple
a) keys b) walls c) books d) rulers

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(kings – walked – peaceful – carvings – restore)

Last week, we visited the Temple of Dakka. It was amazing. We (1) through its tall gates and watched the amazing (2) that tell stories of ancient gods and (3) The sunlight shines softly on its walls and the quiet desert around the temple creates a (4) feeling.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many great temples have stood strongly for thousands of years in many places in Egypt. They show the amazing heritage and culture of Egyptians. Some of them have become symbols of Egypt's history like the Temple of Dakka. Kings and rulers have designed temples for ancient gods. Over time some Roman and Greek emperors have added carvings and walls to some of these temples. They showed their respect for Egypt's culture and traditions.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The text is about
 a) pyramids b) temples c) treasures d) tombs
- 2- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
 a) traditions b) gods c) temples d) emperors

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What do the temples show?

- 4- Why have the rulers built temples?

- 5- What have emperors added?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- visited - Temple - I - Dakka - have - of - the .

- 2- protected - history - for - years - Egypt - thousands of - has - its .

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We (are) lived in Cairo for years.
- 2- My friend has (find) his pen under the chair.
- 3- Ola (have) studied her lessons.
- 4- I have (be) in Cairo for days.
- 5- Rulers (has) designed temples for gods.
- 6- (Has) experts restored the Temple of Dakka carefully?
- 7- Many tourists..... (not visited) the tomb of Petosiris.

6 Punctuate the following.

I haven t done my homework

.....

has he finished his work

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below "The Temple of Dakka".

(Nubia – ruler)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



tour guide

مرشد سياحي



craftsman

حرفي



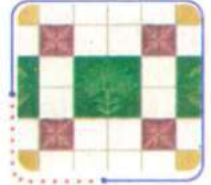
design

يصمم / تصميم



discover

يكشف



pattern

نمط / نموذج

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

daily life

الحياة اليومية

interesting

مثير للاهتمام

ancient Egypt

مصر القديمة

drawings

رسومات

royal

ملكي

notes

ملاحظات

place

مكان

kind

نوع

Valley of the Kings

وادي الملوك

exactly

بالضبط

unknown

مجهول / غير معروف

wonderful

رائع

skillfully

بمهارة

lost

مفقود

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
live يعيش	lived	discover يكتشف	discovered
paint يلون / يدهن	painting	notice يلاحظ	noticed

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
say يقول	said	said
understand يفهم	understood	understood

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

Craftsman : a person who builds or makes things skillfully.

الحرفي: هو شخص يبني أو يصنع أشياء بمهارة.

Discover : to find something that was lost or unknown.

يكشف: أن يجد شيء مفقود أو غير معروف.

Check your Vocab.

S B Fill in the blanks using words from the box.

(craftsman – design – discover – restore – pattern)

- 1- A person who builds or makes things skillfully is a
- 2- To find something that was lost or unknown is to it.
- 3- The beautiful shapes on the walls show a wonderful
- 4- The team will the old tombs to keep them safe.
- 5- The artist made a new for the temple doors.



Main points

- Deir el-Medina is an ancient village where the craftsmen who built the royal tombs once lived.
- دير المدينة هي قرية قديمة حيث عاش بها الحرفيين الذين بنوا المقابر الملكية ذات يوم.
- Skilled workers and artists who have painted and carved the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings, lived here.
- العمال والفنانين الماهرين الذين رسموا ونحتوا مقابر الملوك في وادي الملوك، عاشوا هنا.
- Archaeologists discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.
- علماء الآثار اكتشفوا رسومات وملاحظات على قطع الفخار.
- Deir el-Medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt
- دير المدينة يساعدنا أن نفهم الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.

Reading

- Listen, and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Tour Guide: Welcome to Deir el-Medina, the ancient village where the craftsmen who built the royal tombs once lived.

Have you ever heard about this place before?

المرشد السياحي: أهلاً بكم في دير المدينة، القرية القديمة التي عاش بها الحرفيين الذين بنوا المقابر الملكية يوماً ما. هل سمعتم بهذا المكان من قبل؟

Tourist : No, I haven't. Who lived here?

السائح: لا، لم أسمع. من عاش هنا؟

Tour Guide: Skilled workers and artists have lived here with their families. They have painted and carved the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings.

المرشد السياحي: عاش هنا عمال مهرة وفنانون مع عائلاتهم. لقد رسموا ونقشوا مقابر الملوك في وادي الملوك.

Tourist : Have archaeologists discovered anything interesting in their houses?

السائح: هل اكتشف علماء الآثار أي شيء مثير للاهتمام في منازلهم؟

Tour Guide: Yes, they have. They've discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.

المرشد السياحي: نعم، لقد اكتشفوا رسومات وملاحظات على قطع فخارية.

Tourist : That sounds like the first kind of notebook!

السائح: يبدو أن هذا هو النوع الأول من الدفاتر!

Tour Guide: Exactly! Have you noticed the patterns on the walls? They show how the workers decorated their homes.

المرشد السياحي: بالضبط! هل لاحظت النقوش على الجدران؟ إنها تظهر كيف كان العمال يزينون منازلهم.

Tourist : It's wonderful to see how artists lived thousands of years ago.

السائح: من الرائع أن نرى كيف عاش الفنانون منذ آلاف السنين.

Tour Guide: Many visitors have said the same. Deir el-Medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

المرشد السياحي: قد قال العديد من الزوار نفس الشيء. دير المدينة تساعدنا على فهم الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.

S.B Read and write T (True) or F (False).

اقرأ واكتب صح أو خطأ.

- 1- Deir el-Medina was a village for the craftsmen who built tombs. ()
- 2- The workers lived far from their families. ()
- 3- Archaeologists have found drawings on pieces of pottery. ()
- 4- The workers decorated their homes with wall patterns. ()
- 5- Many visitors have said that Deir el-Medina shows daily life in ancient Egypt. ()

B : Pronunciation

النطق

Suffix (-ify)

نضيف اللاحقة (-ify) إلى الاسم أو الصفة لنكون فعل.
اللاحقة (-ify) معناها " أن تجعل " أو " تسبب لتصبح ".

simple	بسيط	→	simplify	يبسط
pure	نقي	→	purify	ينقي
clear	واضح	→	clarify	يوضح
beauty	جمال	→	beautify	يجمل

Words and meanings كلمات ومعانيها

Simplify: to make something simple

يبسط: أن يجعل شيئاً ما بسيط

Purify : to make clean or pure

ينقي: أن يجعله نظيف أو نقي

Clarify : to make something clear

يوضح: أن يجعل شيئاً ما واضح

Suffix (-er)

اللاحقة (-er) تعني الشخص الذي يقوم بعمل شيء.

drive	يقود	→	driver	سائق
bake	يخبز	→	baker	خباز
teach	يعلم	→	teacher	معلم
train	يتدرب	→	trainer	مدرب

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

أو الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- Deir el-Medina helps us understand the daily life in ancient Egypt. ()
- Farmers lived in Deir el-Medina thousands of years ago. ()
- There are patterns on the ground. ()
- The workers decorated their homes. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- I have the patterns on the walls.
a) notices b) note c) notice d) noticed
- 2- Skilled workers have painted and the tombs of the kings.
a) buried b) carved c) watched d) slept
- 3- discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.
a) Archaeologists b) Workers c) Teachers d) Guides
- 4- The craftsmen built the royal tombs to bury kings.
a) have b) has c) are d) were
- 5- Deir el-Medina is an ancient
a) tower b) gate c) city d) village

3 Complete the text with the words in the box.

(families – painted – craftsmen – ancient – village)

Last week, we visited Deir el-Medina. It is an (1) village where the (2) who built the royal tombs lived. Skilled workers have lived here with their (3) They have (4) and carved the tombs of the kings. They were very skillful.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- daily life - How - understand - the village - does - us - help - in Egypt ?
.....
- 2- doors - The artist - a new - the temple - made - design - for - has .
.....
- 3- near - The - their - workers - families - lived .
.....
- 4- kings - the tombs - Egyptian - Who - of - built - ancient - the ?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Have you (**hear**) about Deir el-Medina?
- 2- Engineers work to (**pure**) the water before we get it.
- 3- Where (**does**) your uncle lived?
- 4- A (**bake**) makes fresh bread and cakes.
- 5- She has (**notice**) that I'm angry.
- 6- Modern machines (**simple**) work and save time.
- 7- Skilled workers (**are**) painted the tombs.
- 8- The teacher helped (**clear**) the new rule for the students.
- 9- A (**teach**) helps students learn.
- 10- The (**drive**) took us to the museum.

6 Punctuate the following.

they have played the game

.....

has he finished work

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:
"Deir el-Medina".**

(craftsmen – drawing)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

fossil	حفريّة	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
desert trails	مسارات الصحراء		
The Valley of the Whales = Wadi El Hitan			وادي الحيتان

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

explorer	مستكشف	wonders	عجائب
whale	حوت	details	تفاصيل
the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	bones	عظام
deep	عميق	remarkable	بارز
area	منطقة	land animals	حيوانات الأرض
ocean	محيط	magnificent	مثير للإعجاب
natural	طبيعي	creature	مخلوق
generation	جيل	historical	تاريخي
hidden	مخفي / مُخبأ	importance	أهمية
young people	الشباب	story	قصة
tour	جولة	cruise booking	حجز رحلة بحرية
ease	سهولة	exclusive	حصري / خاص
guided tours	جولات إرشادية	package	باقة / عرض
resort	منتجع	tailored	مصمم خصيصاً
personalized itineraries			خطط سفر مخصصة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
ensure يتأكد / يضمن	ensured	remind يذكر	reminded
post ينشر	posted	appreciate يُقدّر	appreciated
remain يبقى	remained		

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
swim يسبح	swam	swum

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

covered by
change from to
millions of years ago
longer than 15 meters
get in touch

مغطى بـ
يتحول من ... إلى ...
منذ ملايين السنوات
أطول من ١٥ متر
يتصل / يتواصل



Main points

- Wadi El-Hitan is a magical place in the Western Desert.
- وادي الحيتان مكان سحري في الصحراء الغربية.
- Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam here.
- علماء الآثار اكتشفوا مئات الحفريات من الحيتان القديمة التي كانت تسبح هنا يوماً ما.
- Whales changed from land animals into magnificent ocean creatures.
- تحولت الحيتان من حيوانات برية إلى مخلوقات بحرية رائعة.
- Visitors can walk along the desert trails and see the fossils lying exactly where they were found.
- الزوار يمكنهم أن يمشوا بإمتداد المسارات الصحراوية ويراوا الحفريات ترقد بالضبط في المكان التي وجدت فيه.
- Egypt has protected this area carefully to remain safe for future generations.
- تحمي مصر هذه المنطقة بعناية لتبقى آمنة للأجيال المستقبلية.

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales.
a) Engineers b) Archaeologists c) Doctors d) Teachers
2. Visitors can walk along the desert and see the fossil.
a) treasure b) remarkable c) museum d) trails
3. Wadi El-Hitan is also called the Valley of the
a) Monkeys b) Lions c) Whales d) Rabbits
4. Whales changed from animals into ocean creatures.
a) land b) water c) sea d) river

Wadi El-Hitan: Egypt's Valley of the Whales

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Posted on March 15, 2025

نُشر في ١٥ مارس ٢٠٢٥

By Salma, Student Explorer

بقلم سلمى.

Deep in the Western Desert, there is a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a very big ocean. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam here.

في أعماق الصحراء الغربية، يوجد مكان ساجر يُدعى وادي الحيتان. منذ ملايين السنين، كانت هذه المنطقة مغطاة بمحيط شاسع. وقد اكتشف علماء الآثار مئات من حفريات الحيتان القديمة التي كانت تسبح هنا.

Some of these skeletons are longer than 15 meters, showing incredible details of their bones. These fossils tell a remarkable story about how whales changed from land animals into the magnificent ocean creatures we know today.

يتجاوز طول بعض هذه الهياكل العظمية ١٥ مترًا، مما يُظهر تفاصيل مذهلة لعظامها. تروي هذه الحفريات قصة رائعة عن كيفية تحوّل الحيتان من حيوانات برية إلى مخلوقات المحيط الرائعة التي نعرفها اليوم.

Because of its scientific and historical importance, Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site. Visitors can walk along the desert trails and see the fossils lying exactly where they were found. It feels like visiting a natural museum, where every fossil tells a story. Egypt has protected this area carefully to ensure the fossils remain safe for future generations.

بسبب أهميته العلمية والتاريخية، أصبح وادي الحيتان موقعًا للتراث العالمي. يمكن للزوار المشي على طول المسارات الصحراوية ورؤية الحفريات في مكانها التي وجدت فيه بالضبط. ستشعر وكأنك في متحف طبيعي، حيث تروي كل حفرة قصة. حمت مصر هذه المنطقة بعناية لتضمن سلامة الحفريات للأجيال القادمة.

Wadi El-Hitan is not just a place of science, it is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history, reminding young people to appreciate and feel proud of their country's treasures.

وادي الحيتان ليس مجرد مكان للعلوم، بل هو رمز للتاريخ الطبيعي الغني لمصر، ويذكر الشباب بتقدير كنوز بلادهم والفخر بها.

S.B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Wadi El-Hitan is also known as
 - a) The Valley of Kings
 - b) The Valley of the Whales
 - c) The Valley of the Desert
- 2- Some whale skeletons are
 - a) 5 meters long
 - b) 10 meters long
 - c) more than 15 meters long
- 3- Egypt protects this site to
 - a) build new museums
 - b) keep fossils safe
 - c) bring more water

Writing:

- How to write a short blog.

كيفية كتابة مدونة قصيرة.

- 1- Start with a title that catches attention.
- 2- Write the date and your name.
- 3- Use paragraphs to organize your ideas.
- 4- Describe the place or event clearly.
- 5- Share your feelings or opinion.
- 6- End with a take home message.

- ابدأ بعنوان يلفت الانتباه.

- اكتب التاريخ واسمك.

- استخدم فقرات لتنظم أفكارك.

- صف المكان أو الحدث بوضوح.

- شارك مشاعرك أو رأيك.

- اختتم برسالة أساسية تريد الناس أن يتذكروها.

Think and Create

Project: Egypt's Hidden Wonders Tour

About Our Company

Discover the world with ease. We offer personalized itineraries, guided tours, cruise bookings, and exclusive resort packages tailored to your dream vacation.

عن شركتنا

اكتشف العالم بسهولة. نحن نقدم برامج سفر مخصصة، وجولات سياحية مع مرشدين، وحجوزات للرحلات البحرية، وباقات منتجعات حضرية مصممة خصيصًا لعطلة أحلامك.



Get in Touch

Mobile: +1 (555) 123-667

Email: info@starstravel.com

Website: www.starstravel.com

Social: @starstravel



Welcome to Stars Travel & Tours

Plan your unforgettable journey with us

مرحبًا بكم في ستارز للسفر
والسياحة

خطط لرحلتك التي لا تنسى معنا



Exercises

Lessons 4,5

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Egypt has protected Wadi El-Hitan carefully. ()
- 2- Wadi El-Hitan is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history. ()
- 3- Egypt protected Wadi El-Hitan for the past generation. ()
- 4- It reminds young people to appreciate Egypt's treasures. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The Valley of the is a magical place in the Western Desert.
a) lions b) Whales c) cats d) foxes
- 2- A tomb is a room where people were in ancient times.
a) sleep b) eat c) watch d) buried
- 3- The experts worked hard to the old temple.
a) drink b) restore c) cover d) run
- 4- Wadi El-Hitan has a world heritage site.
a) becoming b) become c) becomes d) became
- 5- Visitors walk through the desert trails and the fossils lying exactly where they were found.
a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(discovered - skeleton - ocean - Desert - years)

There are many natural places in Egypt. Deep in the Western
(1)..... . There is a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan.
Millions of (2)..... ago, this area was covered by a big (3).....
Archaeologists has (4)..... hundreds of fossils of ancient
whales that once swam here.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Wadi El Hitan lies in Egypt's Western Desert, is a world heritage site. Many scientists come to see this magical place. It's famous for hundreds of fossils remains of ancient whales. The fossils show how whales changed from land animals into marine animals. Visitors wonder about the skeletons preserved in sand, surrounded by fantastic desert landscapes. This site offers both scientific knowledge and amazing beauty. The place feels like a window into Earth's past.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The main idea of the text is about the Valley of the
 a) Camels b) Whales c) Birds d) Lions
- 2- The underlined words "marine animals" mean animals.
 a) land b) forest c) desert d) sea

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the site famous for?

- 4- What do the fossils show?

- 5- What does the place feel like?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- in - Egypt's - are - desert - There - fossils - whale .

- 2- is - Wadi El-Hitan - rich - Egypt's - a symbol - of - history - natural.

- 3- a - you - Have - seen - fossil - the area - in ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Scientists have (**find**) new tombs.
- 2- Children (**has**) finished their homework.
- 3- Wadi El-Hitan is (**know**) as the Valley of the Whales.
- 4- Archaeologists have (**discover**) fossils of ancient whales.

7 Punctuate the following.

I visited Wadi El-Hitan

.....

It's egypt's history

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:
"A visit to Wadi El-Hitan".
(skeletons - generations)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Important vocabulary

burial	الدفن	temple	معبد
discovery	اكتشاف	ruler	حاكم
mummy	مومياء	border	حد
archaeologist	عالم آثار	monument	أثر
chamber	غرفة جنائزية	wisdom	حكمة
mystery	لغز	emperor	إمبراطور
carvings	نقوش	tourists	سياح
tomb	مقبرة	treasure	كنز
walls	جدران	god	إله
heritage	تراث	symbol	رمز
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
craftsman	حرفي	worker	عامل
design	تصميم	drawings	رسومات
pattern	نمط / نموذج	pottery	الفخار
simplify	يبسط	fossil	حفريّة
purify	ينقي	scientist	عالم
clarify	يوضح	explorer	مستكشف
beautify	يجمل	desert trails	مسارات الصحراء
wonders	عجائب	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
generation	جيل	creature	مخلوق
ocean	محيط	young people	الشباب

Adjectives

ancient	أثري / قديم	unforgettable	لا تُنسى
mysterious	غامض	mummified	محنط
preserved	محفوظ	underground	تحت الأرض
artistic	فني	magical	سحري / ساحر

crowded / busy	مزدحم	rising	متزايد
peaceful	آمن / هادئ	lost	مفقود
skilled	ماهر	hidden	مخفي / مخبأ
unknown	مجهول / غير معروف	deep	عميق
Incredible	لا يصدق / رائع	magnificent	مثير للإعجاب

Important verbs

Regular verbs

amaze (d)	يدهش	protect (ed)	يحمي	imagine (d)	يتخيل
create (d)	ينشئ	restore (d)	يرمم	discover (ed)	يكشف
fascinate (d)	يبهش / يسحر	expand (ed)	يوسع	post (ed)	ينشر
raise (d)	يرفع / يزيد	decorate (d)	يزين	carve (d)	ينحت
develop (ed)	يطور	locate (d)	يقع	remind (ed)	يذكر
appreciate (d)	يقدر				

Irregular verbs

lie - lay - lain	يقع	find - found - found	يجد
stand - stood - stood	يقف / يقف	swim - swam - swum	يسبح
know - knew - known	يعرف	see - saw - seen	يرى
build - built - built	يبني	understand - understood - understood	يفهم
go - went - gone	يذهب		

Important paragraphs

Tuna el-Gebel

Tuna el-Gebel lies in the desert near Minya. It is a mysterious burial site. The area is famous for its underground chambers and long corridors filled with ancient art. The tomb of Petosiris stands in the middle of the site. Walking through Tuna el-Gebel makes you feel like traveling back in time. The quiet desert, the carvings, and the smell of history make the place unforgettable.

The Temple of Dakka

The Temple of Dakka is an ancient monument that has stood for thousands of years in Nubia. It's a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history. Many rulers have designed temples for ancient gods. Greek and Roman emperors have added new walls and carvings to the temple. Egyptian experts have restored the temple and moved every stone to higher ground after the High Dam raised water level. Visitors feel proud of how Egypt has protected its history and treasures.

Deir el-Medina

Deir el-Medina is an ancient village where the craftsmen who built the royal tombs once lived. Skilled workers and artists have painted and carved the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings. Archaeologists discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery. Deir el-Medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

A Visit to Wadi El-Hitan

We visited Wadi El-Hitan last week. Wadi El-Hitan is a magical place in the Western Desert. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam here. Whales changed from land animals into magnificent ocean creatures. Visitors can walk along the desert trails and see the fossils lying exactly where they were found. Egypt has protected this area carefully to remain safe for future generations. It was a very nice trip.

Important language

The present perfect tense

Affirmative

have / has + P.P

Ex: - We have visited the temple.
- It has become a symbol.

Negative

haven't / hasn't + P.P

Ex: - She hasn't eaten lunch.
- I haven't done my homework.

Question

Have / Has + subject + P.P ?

Wh-word + have / has + subject + P.P ?

Ex: - Has he played the match?
- What have you seen in the temple?

Top student

- Find the mistake and write the correct form of the word(s).

- 1- Egypt have moved the Temple of Dakka to higher ground. (.....)
- 2- Many tourists visited haven't the tomb of Petosiris. (.....)
- 3- Archaeologists have discover hundreds of mummies. (.....)
- 4- Students hasn't learnt about ancient Egypt. (.....)
- 5- Experts have restore the Temple of Dakka carefully. (.....)

- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- the team - successfully - Has - work - finished - their ?
.....
- 2- built - Engineers - new - have - bridges - several .
.....
- 3- has - to - The country - started - modern - cities - build .
.....
- 4- lived - Who - here - has - peacefully ?
.....
- 5- the patterns - walls - They - noticed - on - haven't - the .
.....

General Test on unit 3

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الدستماح في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Egypt hasn't got a lot of ancient sites. ()
- 2- Ancient Egyptians were very clever. ()
- 3- The Temple of Dakka is one of the ancient sites. ()
- 4- Visitors are amazed when they walk through its gates. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- discovered hundreds of preserved animals.
a) Teachers b) Tourists c) Archaeologists d) Farmers
- 2- The on the walls show how workers decorated their rooms.
a) patterns b) bricks c) colors d) photo
- 3- What have your brothers in the competition?
a) draw b) draws c) drawing d) drawn
- 4- She visited the Temple of Dakka.
a) doesn't b) isn't c) hasn't d) haven't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(proud - traveled - Minya - has - site)

Last Monday, our school organized a trip to (1)..... We visited Tuna el-Gebel. It's a mysterious burial (2)..... that has amazed the archaeologists. When we walked through Tuna el-Gebel, we felt like we (3)..... back in time. We felt very (4)..... of our history.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My uncle is from Aswan. Last weekend, we traveled to visit him. He is a tour guide. He likes his job very much, so he took us to visit ancient sites like the Temple of Dakka. It is in Nubia, near the southern border of Egypt. Many rulers have designed temples for ancient gods like Thoth, the god of wisdom. Visitors walk through its tall gates and watch amazing carvings. The temple has walls and carvings that were added by Greek and Roman emperors. The temple once stood close to the Nile, but the experts have restored and moved it to a higher place.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "It" refers to
 a) Aswan b) tour guide c) family d) Temple of Dakka
- 2- His uncle is a
 a) traveler b) tour guide c) tourist d) teacher

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Who added walls and carvings to the temple?

- 4- Where is the Temple of Dakka located?

- 5- What activities can visitors enjoy in the Temple of Dakka?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- of - The Temple - near - Dakka - border - lies - southern - Egypt's

- 2- your - Has - liked - family - carvings - the ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1- Experts have (restore) the temple.

2- I (don't) visited Aswan before.

7 Punctuate the following.

..... has he watched the film

..... my family likes traveling

8 Write an email of (60) words to your friend Reem. Your name is Aysel. Your email address is sola@friendmail.com. Her email address is remo@friendmail.com.

"Ancient places".
(tourists - history)

New Message
—

To :

Subject :

.....,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test on unit 3

1 Read and complete the dialog.

(Temple - Minya - visited - Have - gates - Has)

Uday : Have you (1)..... ancient sites before?

Maya : Yes, I have. I have visited the (2)..... of Dakka.

Uday : How was your visit?

Maya : I enjoyed walking through its (3)..... and watching amazing carvings?

Uday : (4)..... you enjoyed your visit?

Maya : Sure. How about you?

Uday : I have visited (5)..... and enjoyed Tuna el-Gebel.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- What (has) you seen?
- 2- Have you (like) your visit?
- 3- She (doesn't) traveled by plane before.
- 4- We have (find) our toys.
- 5- He (is) slept early.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Archaeologists hundreds of preserved animals.
a) discovered b) made c) teach d) travel
- 2- The workers have their rooms well.
a) visited b) decorated c) damaged d) polluted
- 3- A is a special room inside a tomb.
a) chamber b) mummy c) gate d) walls

Unit 3

- 4- We are proud of our history and rich
a) rooms b) heritage c) tomb d) pyramid
- 5- The tomb walls are covered with beautiful
a) carvings b) ground c) stairs d) mummy
- 6- Where have you, Ali?
a) go b) going c) went d) gone
- 7- We liked English and Arabic.
a) either b) both c) neither d) so
- 8- I visited the temple walls are very colorful.
a) who b) which c) where d) whose
- 9- She studied her lessons.
a) hasn't b) doesn't c) haven't d) isn't
- 10- My mother has a delicious meal.
a) cook b) cooks c) cooking d) cooked

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- 1- have - has - does - did (.....)
- 2- rebuild - reuse - replay - do (.....)
- 3- stayed - visited - help - arrived (.....)
- 4- into - go - next to - under (.....)
- 5- back - blue - green - yellow (.....)



5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last Friday, Ali went on a trip to Minya. He visited Tuna el-Gebel. It's a mysterious burial site that has amazed the archaeologists. In the middle of the site stands the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest who lived more than two thousand years ago.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Last Sunday, Ali went on a trip. ()
- 2- Ali visited Tuna el-Gebel. ()
- 3- The tomb of Petosiris is in the middle of the site. ()

B Choose the correct answer.

- 4- Ali traveled to
 a) Aswan b) Minya c) Cairo d) Alex
- 5- A high lived in the middle of the site.
 a) guide b) teacher c) tourist d) priest

**6 Write a paragraph of five sentences using the words below:
 "Temple of Dakka".**

(Nubia - border - visitors - proud - tall gates)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

determination	عزيمة	clockmaker	صانع الساعات
shared	مشارك	real	حقيقي
sculptor	نحات	dust	تراب / غبار
perfect	مثالي	back	الى الوراء
marble	رخام	forth	الى الامام
expensive	غالي	studio	استوديو
silently	بصمت	harbor	ميناء
sunrise	شروق الشمس	next door	المنزل المجاور
centuries	قرون	beauty	جمال
reminder	تذكير	spirit	روح
dislike	كراهية	abroad	الخارج
competition	مسابقة	similar	مشابهة

Important verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
mix (ed)	يخلط	adjust (ed)	يضبط
praise (d)	يمدح	place (d)	يضع
brush (ed)	ينظف بالفرشاة	cover (ed)	يطارد

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
dream	يحلُم	dreamed - dreamt
take place	يحدث	took place
hang	يعلق	hanged - hung
		dreamed - dreamt
		taken place
		hanged - hung

Reading: The Hidden Artist of Alexandria

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

In an old street in Alexandria, an artist worked silently in his small studio. He covered his canvas with colors, using his favorite paintbrush and palette. On the walls around him hung drawings, sketches, and even a mural that showed the city's harbor at sunrise. He dreamed of creating a masterpiece that would inspire young artists across Egypt.

في أحد شوارع الإسكندرية القديمة، كان فنان يعمل بصمت في مرسمه الصغير، كان يُغطي لوحاته بالألوان، مستخدمًا فرشاته ولوحة ألوانه المفضلة. وعلى الجدران المحيطة به، عُلفت رسومات ومخططات، بل وحتى جدارية تظهر ميناء المدينة عند شروق الشمس. كان يحلم بصنع تحفة فنية تلهم الفنانين الشباب في جميع أنحاء مصر.

Next door, his friend, an archaeologist, was studying a sculpture that had been carved centuries ago. They often talked about how both art and history told Egypt's story in different ways. While one man painted the future, the other discovered the past. Their shared determination and love for beauty connected their worlds a reminder that creativity and discovery are two sides of the same spirit.

في الجوار، كان صديقه، عالم الآثار، يدرس منحوتة تم نحتها منذ قرون. كثيرًا ما كانا يتحدثان عن اختلاف طرق سرد الفن والتاريخ لقصة مصر. فبينما كان أحدهما يرسم المستقبل، كان الآخر يكتشف الماضي. كانت عزيمتهما المشتركة وحبهما للجمال يربطان عالميهما، تذكراً بأن الإبداع والاكتشاف جانبان من نفس الروح.

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1- The artist mixed colors carefully on her before starting the mural on the school wall.
a) sculpture b) palette c) sketch d) canvas
- 2- The engineer studied the of the new flying car before assembling its parts.
a) blueprint b) pendulum c) chamber d) border
- 3- The found a beautifully decorated ancient tomb.
a) ruler b) craftsman c) archaeologist d) sculptor

Review 1

- 4- The clockmaker adjusted every small inside the clock to make sure it kept accurate time.
a) gear b) tool c) sketch d) temple
- 5- The young artist's of a lion looked so real that everyone praised her as a talented sculptor.
a) invention b) mural c) sculpture d) monument

2 Fill in the blanks using words from the box

(sculptor – pendulum – archaeologist – palette – blueprint)

- 1- The artist placed her colors on the before starting to paint the large wall.
- 2- The carefully brushed the dust away from the ancient statue he had just found.
- 3- The engineer followed the detailed to build the new machine correctly.
- 4- The clock's moved slowly back and forth, keeping perfect time.
- 5- The carved the marble into an incredible figure that amazed everyone at the museum.

3 Correct the word in brackets.

- 1- We (has build) many new roads to connect the modern cities.
- 2- The engineer (which) designed the smart bridge works in the New Administrative Capital.
- 3- The monorail is (either) slow nor expensive.
- 4- The hospital is (neither) clean and near our house.
- 5- She (have try) the new ticket machine.

General Test on units 1, 2, 3

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- I made a colorful clay vase. ()
- 2- It is short, with a wide, square base and a narrow top. ()
- 3- I used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand. ()
- 4- The surface feels smooth and shiny. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- To cut or shape wood or stone to make art means to
 a) paint b) carve c) boil d) write
- 2- Neither the teacher the students were late.
 a) nor b) or c) and d) to
- 3- A is a detailed plan for a project.
 a) fabric b) blueprint c) invention d) gadget
- 4- The student invention won was so excited!
 a) who b) where c) whose d) which

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(accurate - workshop - pendulum - linen - invention)

People first used the sun and falling sand to track time. Later, clever people built the first clocks. They used a swinging (1)..... and gears to make the time more (2)..... The movement of the pendulum was important for keeping time right. One engineer made a famous design in a (3)..... that could count every second. This great (4)..... completely changed how people lived and do their work.

Review 1

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The 1922 discovery of Pharaoh Tutankhamun's tomb in the Valley of the Kings was a huge moment in history. Unlike most royal tombs, it was nearly untouched. The tomb was filled with thousands of amazing artifacts. Everything, from jewelry to furniture, showed the great skill of the ancient craftsmen. Every piece was created with accurate details. We can see the complex design and beautiful gold work on the famous mask. Even the boxes were painted with incredible patterns. This amazing discovery helped us understand how that great king lived and died.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The tomb was filled with thousands of amazing
a) artifacts b) palettes c) museums d) frames
- 2- The opposite of the underlined word "huge" is
a) tiny b) big c) new d) old

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What can you see there?
.....
- 4- Why was the incredible discovery important?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- What - temples - do - about - know - you - Egypt - in ?
.....
- 2- has - Egypt - protected - history - its - treasures - and .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1- My friend Dalia is both kind (or) smart.

2- This is the zoo..... (who) has a lot of animals.

7 Punctuate the following.

It lies near egypt's southern border with Sudan.

.....

who built this temple

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Wadi El-Hitan".

(whales – skeleton)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Egypt on the Move

مصر في طريق التقدم

Unit Four



Objectives

Vocabulary :

infrastructure, determination, highway
innovation, extend, textile, manufacture,
steel industry, power source, industry, self-reliant

Language :

Used to – Didn't use to – Did --- use to?

Life Skills :

- Economic Awareness

Values :

- Patriotism
- Pride

Integrated Learning Activities :

Design a flyer about a famous place

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



infrastructure
البنية التحتية



determination
إصرار / عزيمة



highway
طريق سريع



bridge
كوبري



innovation
ابتكار / إبداع



extend
يتوسع / يمتد



goods
بضائع



tunnel
نفق

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

project	مشروع	effectively	بكفاءة / بفاعلية
road	طريق	traveling	السفر / التنقل
country	دولة	network	شبكة
transportation	وسائل النقل / النقل	nation	أمة / دولة
system	نظام	efforts	جهود
service	خدمة	towards	تجاه
economy	اقتصاد	development	تنمية
investment	استثمار	will	إرادة
progress	التقدم	construction	بناء / إنشاء
well-being	رفاهية / سعادة	government	حكومة
between	بين	power supplies	مصادر إمداد الطاقة
problem	مشكلة		
the New Administrative Capital			العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

Unit 4

Adjectives

صفات

new	جديد	slow	بطيء	empty	فارغ
prepared	مستعد / جاهز	difficult	صعب	fewer	أقل
recent	مؤخر / حديث	closer	أقرب	connected	متصل
patient	صبور	narrow	ضيق	national	قومي / وطني

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
connect	يربط / يوصل	develop	يطور
improve	يحسن	reach	يصل
transport	ينقل	reflect	يعكس
succeed	ينجح	cover	يغطي
connected		developed	
improved		reached	
transported		reflected	
succeeded		covered	

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
grow	ينمو	grew
bring	يحضر / يجلب	brought
		grown
		brought

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

in order to	لكي	had to	اضطر إلى
took a long time	استغرق وقت طويل	keep trying	يستمر في المحاولة

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

infrastructure: roads, bridges, and systems that help a country work

البنية التحتية: الطرق والكباري والأنظمة التي تساعد الدولة أن تعمل

innovation: new and creative ideas or methods

الابتكار: أفكار وطرق جديدة وإبداعية

determination: a strong will to keep trying until you succeed

الإصرار: إرادة قوية لتستمر في المحاولة حتى تنجح

extend: to make something larger or cover a wider area

يمتد: أن تجعل شيئاً ما أكبر أو يغطي مساحة أوسع

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Engineers are working on a new to reduce crowding.
a) painting b) economy c) highway d) recipe
2. Egypt has improved its through new roads, bridges, and tunnels.
a) infrastructure b) innovation c) determination d) goods
3. is to make something larger or cover a wider area.
a) Extend b) Traveling c) Show d) Bring
4. New and creative ideas or methods are called
a) determination b) construction c) innovation d) empty



Main Points

- Egypt has started new infrastructure projects in recent years.
- بدأت مصر مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة في السنوات الأخيرة.
- These are projects and services, such as transportation and power supplies.
- إنها مشروعات وخدمات مثل النقل وإمدادات الطاقة.
- Skilled engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels that connect all parts of the country.
- المهندسون الماهرون يبنون طرق سريعة وكباري وأنفاق جديدة تربط كل أجزاء الدولة ببعضها.
- Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster and transport goods easily.
- أنظمة المواصلات الحديثة تسمح للناس أن يسافروا أسرع وينقلوا البضائع بسهولة.
- Egypt's investment in infrastructure shows its efforts towards projects to progress and the well-being of its people.
- استثمار مصر في البنية التحتية يوضح جهودها تجاه مشروعات لتقدم وسعادة شعبها.

Reading : Egypt's New Landscape

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Egypt has started new infrastructure projects in recent years. These are projects and services, such as transportation and power supplies, that the country uses in order to work effectively. In the past, roads were narrow, often crowded, and traveling between cities took a long time. People had to be patient, and transporting goods was slow and difficult.

بدأت مصر مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة في السنوات الأخيرة. هذه المشاريع والخدمات، مثل النقل وإمدادات الطاقة التي تستخدمها البلاد لكي تعمل بكفاءة. في الماضي، كانت الطرق ضيقة ومزدحمة في كثير من الأحيان، وكان السفر بين المدن يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً. كان على الناس التحلي بالصبر، وكان نقل البضائع بطيئاً وصعباً.

Today, skilled engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels that connect all parts of the country. These projects show Egypt's determination to extend its road network and improve daily life. The New Administrative Capital, along with the new bridges in Cairo, shows how the nation continues to grow and develop.

اليوم، يبني المهندسون الماهرة طرقاً سريعة وجسوراً وأنفاقاً حديثة تربط جميع أنحاء البلاد. تظهر هذه المشاريع عزم مصر على توسيع شبكة طرقها وتحسين الحياة اليومية. تظهر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة، إلى جانب الجسور الجديدة في القاهرة كيفية استمرار الدولة في النمو والتطور.

Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster, transport goods, and reach work and school more easily. Every new project not only improves Egypt's economy but also brings the country closer together, making it more connected and prepared for the future.

تمكن أنظمة النقل الحديثة الناس من السفر بشكل أسرع، ونقل البضائع، والوصول إلى العمل والمدرسة بسهولة أكبر. كل مشروع جديد لا يحسن الاقتصاد المصري فقط، بل يقرب أيضاً البلد من بعضها، ويجعلها أكثر ترابطاً واستعداداً للمستقبل.

Egypt's investment in infrastructure shows its efforts towards projects to progress and the well-being of its people.

إن استثمار مصر في البنية التحتية يظهر جهودها تجاه المشاريع التي تهدف إلى تقدم ورفاهية شعبها.

S.B Read, think, and answer:

1 - What problems did Egypt have with roads in the past?

.....

2 - What are engineers doing today?

.....

Exercises

Lesson

1

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الدستور في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Egypt is a great country. ()
- 2- Egypt tries hard to build new homes. ()
- 3- The New Administrative Capital is a smart city. ()
- 4- The infrastructure projects help people work easily. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- means roads, bridges, and systems that help a country work.
a) Infrastructure b) Extend c) Structure d) Future
- 2- is to make something larger or cover a wider area.
a) Engineering b) Extend c) Method d) Career
- 3- My friend has a great innovation. He always great ideas.
a) do b) is c) have d) has
- 4- We have determination to win the game.
a) having b) have c) has d) had

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(goods - transportation - projects - narrow - highway)

Egypt has started new infrastructure (1)..... In recent years. These are projects and services, such as (2)..... and power supplies that the country uses in order to work effectively. In the past, roads were (3)....., often crowded, and traveling between cities took a long time. People had to be patient, and transporting (4)..... was slow and difficult.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt has started important infrastructure projects to improve transportation and power systems. A few years ago, roads were narrow and crowded. That made travel and goods transport slow. Today, modern highways, bridges, and tunnels connect the country. These projects show Egypt's determination to grow and improve Egyptian's daily life. Projects like the New Administrative Capital and Cairo's bridges help grow the economy, make travel easy, and connect the country. Egypt today shows determination to make its people have a better life.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- projects can improve transportation and power systems.
a) Patient b) Empty c) Infrastructure d) Closer
- 2- Narrow and crowded roads made transport slow.
a) service b) goods c) network d) tunnel

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the main idea of the text?

.....

- 4- What connects the country today?

.....

- 5- Why did Egypt start these projects?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- extend - its road - continues - The country - to - network .

.....

2- highway - a new - working - Engineers - project - are - on .

3- creativity - projects - Modern - reflect - Egypt's - Infrastructure .

4- reach - the highway - We - took - to - the city - quickly .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- In the past, the roads (are) narrow.

2- Egypt has (starting) new infrastructure projects.

3- Modern systems allow people to (traveled) faster.

7 Punctuate the following.

what are engineers doing today

every project helped Egypt's economy

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:
"Egypt's projects".

(engineers - transport)

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



textile
منسوجات / النسيج



manufacture
تصنيع / يُصنع



steel industry
صناعة الصلب



power source
مصدر طاقة



industrial
صناعي



self-reliant
معتمد على نفسه

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

industry	صناعة / قطاع	high-quality	عالي الجودة
Africa	قارة أفريقيا	farming	الزراعة
the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	greatly	بشكل كبير
job	وظيفة	clothes	ملابس
mainly	بشكل أساسي	fabrics	أقمشة
local	محلي	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
factories	مصانع	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
products	منتجات	wind energy	طاقة الرياح
natural gas	غاز طبيعي	teamwork	عمل جماعي
growing	متزايد	itself	بنفسه / بنفسها
hard work	العمل الجاد	textbook	كتاب مدرسي
export	تصدير	distance	مسافة
fuel	وقود	cement	أسمنت

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
produce	ينتج	contribute	يساهم
depend	يعتمد	believe	يؤمن
change	يتغير	exist	يوجد
create	ينشأ / يخلق	import	يستورد

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
sell	يبيع	sold
get	يحصل على	got

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

In the past	في الماضي	light up the future	يضيء المستقبل
used to	اعتاد أن	refer to	يشير إلى
proud of	فخور أن	contribute to	تساهم في

Check your Vocab.

S.B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The word "textile" refers to
a) food b) fabric c) fuel d) cement
- To is to produce goods using machines.
a) manufacture b) clean c) build d) clear
- Egypt is becoming more self-reliant, which means:
a) depending on other countries b) depending on itself
c) closing its factories d) importing more goods



Main points

- Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East.
- تصبح مصر واحدة من أقوى الدول الصناعية في أفريقيا والشرق الأوسط.
- People used to depend mainly on farming and small local jobs.
- اعتاد الناس على الاعتماد بشكل رئيسي على الزراعة والوظائف المحلية الصغيرة.
- Most villages didn't use to have factories or machines, and transportation used to be slow.
- لم تعتاد كثير من القرى أن يكون بها مصانع أو آلات، والمواصلات اعتادت أن تكون بطيئة.
- Today, the textile industry in cities like Mahalla produces high-quality clothes and fabrics.
- اليوم صناعة المنسوجات في مدن مثل المحلة تنتج ملابس وأقمشة عالية الجودة.
- Egypt has developed a steel industry, which helps build new roads, bridges, and houses.
- طورت مصر صناعة الصلب التي تساعد في بناء طرق وكباري ومنازل جديدة.
- New power resources such as natural gas, solar energy, and wind energy are being used to create clean power for homes and factories.
- مصادر طاقة جديدة مثل الغاز الطبيعي والطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح تستخدم لتوليد طاقة نظيفة للمنازل والمصانع.

Reading

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, life was very different. People used to depend mainly on farming and small local jobs, and most villages didn't use to have factories or machines. We used to get many products from other countries. Transportation used to be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities.

تصبح مصر واحدة من أقوى الدول الصناعية في أفريقيا والشرق الأوسط. في الماضي، كانت الحياة مختلفة جداً. اعتاد الناس أن يعتمدوا بشكل أساسي على الزراعة والوظائف المحلية الصغيرة. ولم تعتاد معظم القرى أن تحتوي على مصانع أو آلات. اعتدنا أن نحصل على العديد من المنتجات من دول أخرى. اعتادت وسائل النقل أن تكون بطيئة. وكان هناك عدد أقل من الوظائف في المدن.

Today, Egypt has changed greatly. The textile industry in cities like Mahalla produces high-quality clothes and fabrics. These products are sold in Egypt and other countries. The food industry now manufactures many Egyptian products such as pasta, juice, and snacks. Egypt has also developed a strong steel industry, which helps build new roads, bridges, and houses.

لقد تغيرت مصر اليوم بشكل كبير. تنتج صناعة النسيج في مدن مثل المحلة ملابس وأقمشة عالية الجودة. وتباع هذه المنتجات في مصر ودول أخرى. ويقوم قطاع المواد الغذائية الآن بتصنيع العديد من المنتجات المصرية مثل المكرونة والعصير والوجبات الخفيفة. كما طورت مصر صناعة قوية للصلب، مما يساعد على بناء طرق وجسور ومنازل جديدة.

New power sources such as natural gas, solar energy, and wind energy are being used to create clean power for homes and factories. These changes have made Egypt more modern and more self-reliant.

يتم استخدام مصادر طاقة جديدة، كالغاز الطبيعي والطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح، لتوليد طاقة نظيفة للمنازل والمصانع. وقد جعلت هذه التغييرات مصر أكثر حداثة واعتمادًا على الذات.

As the country builds new factories, more Egyptians find work and contribute to a growing economy. People today are proud of their country and how it is developing every day. Egypt's industries show how a nation can grow stronger when it believes in innovation, hard work, and teamwork. The factories that once didn't exist now light up the future for millions.

بينما تبنى الدولة مصانع جديدة، يجد المزيد من المصريين فرص عمل ويساهمون في نمو الاقتصاد. يفخر الناس اليوم ببلدهم وبطورها كل يوم. تظهر الصناعات المصرية كيف يمكن للأمة أن تنمو أقوى عندما تؤمن بالابتكار والعمل الجاد والعمل الجماعي. المصانع التي لم تكن موجودة في السابق تثير الآن مستقبل الملايين.

اقرأ واكتب (T) للصح أو (F) للخطأ. * Read and write (T) True and (F) False. (S.B)

1. In the past, most Egyptians worked in factories. ()
2. The textile industry in Mahalla produces fabrics and clothes. ()
3. Egypt didn't use to have big factories. ()
4. The food industry produces only snacks for export. ()
5. Egypt is now using solar and wind energy as power sources. ()

Language

used to اعتاد أن

- نستخدم **used to** للتعبير عن أشياء كانت تحدث بشكل منتظم في الماضي و أصبحت لا تحدث الآن أو عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي و أصبحت لا تحدث الآن .

Form التكوين

+ Affirmative الاثبات

المصدر + used to + الفاعل

- Ex: - Students **used to** walk long distances in the past.
 - Egypt **used to** depend on farming before modern industries.

- Negative النفي

المصدر + didn't use to + الفاعل

- Ex: - My parents **didn't use to** study with computers.
 - People **didn't use to** work in large factories in the past.

? Yes/No question السؤال بهل

? تكلمة + المصدر + use to + الفاعل + Did

- Ex: - Did Egypt **use to** export textiles?
 - Yes, Egypt **used to** export textiles. (Yes, it did.)
 - No, Egypt **didn't use to** export textiles. (No, it didn't.)

Check your language:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Students used to on small boards.
 a) write b) writes c) wrote d) writing
- 2- Schools didn't to have computers.
 a) used b) using c) use d) uses

- 3- students use to study online?
 a) Does b) Is c) Are d) Did
- 4- Egypt didn't use to big factories.
 a) has b) have c) had d) having
- 5- Children use to learn online.
 a) doesn't b) isn't c) didn't d) aren't
- 6- Did students to use tablets?
 a) used b) use c) uses d) using
- 7- Ali to fly a kite when he was young.
 a) uses b) use c) used d) using
- 8- teachers use to work on laptops?
 a) Did b) Does c) Are d) Can
- 9- Egypt didn't use have good infrastructure.
 a) on b) for c) in d) to
- 10- The country didn't use to goods to other countries.
 a) exports b) export c) exporting d) exported
- 11- Transportation used to slow.
 a) is b) are c) been d) be
- 12- Teachers depend on textbooks only.
 a) use to b) used to c) uses to d) using to

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Villages (**doesn't**) use to have factories in the past.
- 2- Transportation used to (**is**) slow.
- 3- We (**using**) to get many products from other countries.
- 4- People used to (**depended**) on farming.
- 5- (**Do**) students use to study online?

- 6- What did most Egyptians (**used**) to do in the past?
- 7- Children (**not used**) to learn online.
- 8- Students used to (**walking**) long distances to school.
- 9- Did Egypt use (**for**) export textiles?
- 10- In the past, Egypt didn't (**used**) to have many factories.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- with - use - **They** - to - computers - didn't - study .
.....
- 2- depend - to - **Teachers** - textbooks - used - on .
.....
- 3- people - **Did** - work - to - large - use - in - factories ?
.....
- 4- bikes - to - **We** - ride - used - we were - when - young .
.....
- 5- small - write - to - **Students** - on - used - boards .
.....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The Industry produces fabrics and clothes.
a) textile b) farming c) food d) energy
- 2- Egypt is using solar and wind energy to create energy.
a) polluted b) nonrenewable c) clean d) high
- 3- I to get up early last year.
a) use b) using c) uses d) used
- 4- My friend use to walk to school.
a) don't b) didn't c) isn't d) wasn't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.
(machines - industrial - didn't - import - depend)

Egypt is becoming one of the leading (1)..... countries in the area. A few years ago, life was very different. People used to (2)..... mainly on farming. They also had small local jobs, and most villages didn't use to have factories or (3)..... . We used to (4)..... many products from other countries.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt has planned to be a strong industrial country over the past years. Instead of depending mainly on farming and local jobs, we developed many industries. The textile industry has grown well, producing high-quality clothes and fabrics. Now, the food industry manufactures many Egyptian products that Egyptians use. We can also export these products to other countries.

Egypt has turned to clean energy using new power sources like natural gas, solar energy, and wind energy. All these projects have made Egypt one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined "manufactures" means
 a) depends b) believes c) exists d) produces
- 2- The textile industry produces fabrics.
 a) high-quality b) low-quality c) proud d) hard

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What has Egypt planned to be?

- 4- What can we do with our products?

- 5- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- are - country - important for - industries - Why - our ?
.....
- 2- used - Transportation - the past - slow - to - in - be .
.....
- 3- day - country - Our - developing - is - every .
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We used (doing) homework after school.
- 2- What (does) you use to do when you were young?
- 3- The new projects have (make) Egypt more modern.

6 Punctuate the following.

we are proud of egypt.

.....

what are our industries important for

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: "Egypt's industries".

(steel - food)

.....

.....

.....

.....

A) Egypt Past and Present

مصر الماضي والحاضر

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

firewood	حطب / وقود الخشب	cement	أسمنت
industrial zone	منطقة صناعية	type	نوع
technology	تكنولوجيا	coal	فحم
abroad	في الخارج	trade	التجارة
furniture	أثاث	past	الماضي
airport	مطار	present	الحاضر
tourism	السياحة	quickly	بسرعة
fields	حقول		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
include يشتمل / يتضمن	included	support يدعم	supported

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

depend on = rely on	يعتمد على	look like	يشبه
feel proud	يشعر بالفخر	across the country	في جميع أنحاء البلد

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- There are many factories in the zone.
a) technology b) tourism c) firewood d) industrial
- The government factories that use solar and wind power.
a) takes b) supports c) feels d) looks

3. People used In the past to have energy.
a) coal b) cement c) furniture d) electricity
4. We can sell high-quality fabrics
a) board b) broad c) abroad d) a board
5. The country didn't use to on solar energy years ago.
a) rely b) support c) include d) look
6. You can travel by plane at the
a) station b) airport c) stop d) underground



Main Points

- 1- Most people used to work in fields or small local shops.
١- معظم الناس اعتادوا أن يعملوا في الحقول والمطلات المحلية الصغيرة.
- 2- The textile factories produce clothes and fabrics that are sold across the country and even abroad.
٢- مصانع المنسوجات تنتج الملابس والأقمشة التي تباع في جميع أنحاء البلاد وحتى في الخارج.
- 3- Engineers use solar and wind power to create clean energy.
٣- المهندسون يستخدمون الطاقة الشمسية و طاقة الرياح لتوليد طاقة نظيفة.
- 4- The government builds new roads, bridges, and industrial zones to support changes.
٤- الحكومة تبني طرق وكباري ومناطق صناعية جديدة لدعم التغييرات.

Reading:

Egypt used to depend mostly on farming, and most people worked in fields or small local shops. There weren't many factories, and people didn't use to have machines to make goods quickly.

But today, Egypt has developed many new industries. The textile factories produce clothes and fabrics that are sold across the country and even abroad.

Engineers use solar and wind power to create clean energy. The government also builds new roads, bridges, and new cities to support these changes.

Egyptians are proud because their country has become more self-reliant and industrial. Egypt truly doesn't look like it used to – it's growing stronger every day!

اعتادت مصر أن تعتمد في الغالب على الزراعة، وكان معظم الناس يعملون في الحقول أو المتاجر المحلية الصغيرة. لم يكن هناك الكثير من المصانع، ولم يعتاد الناس أن يمتلكوا آلات لصنع البضائع بسرعة. لكن اليوم، طورت مصر العديد من الصناعات الجديدة. تنتج مصانع النسيج الملابس والأقمشة التي تباع في جميع أنحاء البلاد وحتى في الخارج. يستخدم المهندسون الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لإنتاج طاقة نظيفة. وتقوم الحكومة أيضاً ببناء طرق وجسور ومدن جديدة لدعم هذه التغييرات. المصريون فخرون لأن بلدهم أصبحت أكثر اعتماداً على الذات وصناعية. مصر لم تعد تبدو كما كانت في السابق، بل تنمو أقوى كل يوم!

اقرأ واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ. (S.B) * **Read and write (T) True and (F) False.**

1. In the past, Egypt used to have many factories. ()
2. People didn't use to have machines to make goods quickly. ()
3. Today, Egypt's industries include textiles and clean energy. ()
4. The government doesn't support new highways. ()
5. Egypt has become more self-reliant and industrial. ()

The prefix (en-) البادئة

- البادئة (prefix) هي حروف نضعها في أول الكلمة.

- البادئة (en-) معناها أن تسبب لتكون أو تنفذ.

rich	غني	→	enrich	يُثري / يُغني
large	واسع / كبير	→	enlarge	يُوسع / يُكَبِّر
courage	شجاعة	→	encourage	يُشجع
danger	خطر	→	endanger	يُعرض للخطر
able	قادر	→	enable	يُمكِّن
sure	مؤكد	→	ensure	يضمن / يؤكد
close	قريب	→	enclose	يُحيط / يُغلق حول

Ex: - The teacher **encouraged** us to try harder.

- People plant trees to **enrich** the soil.

The suffix (-en) اللاحقة

- اللاحقة (suffix) هي حروف نضعها في آخر الكلمة.

- اللاحقة (-en) معناها أن تصنع أو تصبح.

wide	واسع	→	widen	يُوسع
dark	مظلم	→	darken	يُظلم / يُعتَم
light	فاتح / ضوء	→	lighten	يُضيئ / يُفَتِّح
soft	ناعم / خفيف	→	soften	يُخفف / يُنعم
bright	مشرق	→	brighten	يُضيء / يزداد إشراقاً
deep	عميق	→	deepen	يُعمق
short	قصير / وجيز	→	shorten	يُقصِر / يُوجِز

Ex: - Heavy rain can **darken** the color of the sand.

- They will **widen** the bridge next year.

Exercises

Lesson

3

والاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries. ()
- 2- People used to depend on farming and small local jobs. ()
- 3- Most villages didn't use to have fields. ()
- 4- Transportation used to be fast. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Most people used to work in fields or small shops.
a) international b) national c) local d) dirty
- 2- Wind and energy are examples of clean energy.
a) sun b) solar c) coal d) oil
- 3- My uncle didn't to visit us last year.
a) use b) used c) using d) uses
- 4- We used to early on school days.
a) sleep b) sleeps c) sleeping d) slept

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(wind - fields - Engineers - energy - clothes)

In the past, life was different. Most people used to work in (1)..... or small local shops. Now, they work in textile factories that produce (2)..... and fabric. (3)..... work in modern projects that use solar and (4)..... power to create clean energy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Zaid. I live in an ancient city in Egypt. In the past, my city was a village where people used to depend mostly on farming. They used to work in fields or small local shops. They used to use

coal and firewood to cook. They used to light their homes using wood and candles.

Today, life has changed. There are many modern factories where skilled people work on quick machines. We use new power sources like solar and wind power. Our city has become more self-reliant.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- In the past, people used to depend mostly on
a) industry b) tourism c) fishing d) farming
- 2- Today, there are modern where skilled people work.
a) TVs b) machines c) cars d) factories

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What did people use to light their homes?
.....
- 4- How has life changed?
.....
- 5- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We will (wide) the road next week. It's narrow.
- 2- We (courage) our friend to win the game.
- 3- Long ago, people (work) in fields.
- 4- Egypt doesn't (looked) like it used to.
- 5- There (aren't) many factories in the past.
- 6- People plant trees to (rich) the soil.
- 7- Engineers will (large) the road to reduce traffic.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- draw - What - to - did - brother - use - your ?

.....

2- and - industrial - become - self-reliant - has - more - Egypt .

.....

3- use - wind - Engineers - power - and - solar .

.....

4- builds - roads - The government - new - support - the changes - to .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

what energy does egypt use now?

.....

We have textile steel, and food industries

.....

**8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:
"Egypt past and present".**

(textile factories - solar energy)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

beauty	جمال	beaches	شواطئ
glass	زجاج	walkway	ممشى
building	مبنى	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
god	إله	university	جامعة
stone columns	أعمدة حجرية	tourist spot	منطقة سياحية
hieroglyphics	الكتابة الهيروغليفية	vision	رؤية
complex	مجمع / مجموعة مباني	planning	التخطيط
coastal cities	مدن ساحلية	pharaohs	الفراعنة
northern coast	الساحل الشمالي	statue	تمثال
shopping center	مركز تسوق	symbol	رمز
the Mediterranean Sea			البحر المتوسط
New Alamein City			مدينة العلمين الجديدة
Luxor Temple			معبد الأقصر

Adjectives

الصفات

golden	ذهبي	sandy	رملية
peaceful	هادئ	giant	عملاق / ضخمة
luxury	فاخر	lively	حيوي / مليء بالحياة
grand	كبير / عظيم	wide	عريض / واسع
remarkable	استثنائي / بارز	magnificent	مهيبة / فخمة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
combine	يُدمج	combine	يُكرّم
remain	يُظل	honor	honored
reflect	يُعكس	imagine	يتخيل
	reflected		imagined

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

look like	يشبه	turn into	يتحول إلى
filled with	ممتلئ بـ	is known for	مشهور بـ

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- The blue waters of the Mediterranean meet golden sandy beaches.
a) Stone b) Sea c) Glass d) Temple
- 2- Tourists can stay in hotels.
a) golden b) sandy c) luxury d) bad
- 3- The temple is known its giant statues.
a) for b) to c) at d) in
- 4- The city universities, shopping centers, and cultural areas.
a) reflects b) imagines c) remains d) includes



Main Points

- 1- New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern coastal cities.
١- مدينة العلمين الجديدة واحدة من أحدث المدن الساحلية.
- 2- The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life.
٢- صممت المدينة لتكون مكان ذكي يدمج التاريخ والجمال والحياة العصرية.
- 3- Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees.
٣- الزوار يمكنهم أن يستمتعوا بالشواطئ الهادئة والفنادق الفاخرة وممرات المشي المليئة بأشجار النخيل.
- 4- New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress.
٤- العلمين الجديدة تعكس رؤية مصر نحو التقدم.
- 5- Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex in Luxor.
٥- معبد الأقصر هو مجمع مباني أثري مهيب في الأقصر.
- 6- The temple is known for its giant statues, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics.
٦- المعبد مشهور بتمائله الضخمة والأعمدة الحجرية الطويلة والكتابات الهيروغليفية الجميلة.
- 7- It's one of the country's most remarkable symbols of history and culture.
٧- أنه أحد أبرز الرموز التاريخية و الثقافية للبلاد.

Reading: New Alamein City

مدينة العلمين الجديدة



New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern coastal cities. It lies on the beautiful northern coast, where the blue waters of the Mediterranean Sea meet golden sandy beaches. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future. Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees. The city also includes universities, shopping centers, and cultural areas that make it more than just a tourist spot; it's a new home for many Egyptians. New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress, showing how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern, lively city full of life.

مدينة العلمين الجديدة هي واحدة من أحدث المدن الساحلية في مصر. تقع على الساحل الشمالي الجميل، حيث تلتقي المياه الزرقاء للبحر الأبيض المتوسط بالشواطئ الرملية الذهبية. صُممت المدينة لتكون مكاناً ذكياً يجمع بين التاريخ والجمال والحياة العصرية. الطرق الواسعة والحدائق الخضراء والمباني الزجاجية الشاهقة تجعلها تبدو وكأنها مدينة المستقبل. يمكن للزوار الاستمتاع بالشواطئ الهادئة والفنادق الفاخرة والممرات الجميلة المليئة بأشجار النخيل. وتضم المدينة أيضاً جامعات ومراكز تسوق ومناطق ثقافية تجعلها أكثر من مجرد منطقة سياحية، بل هي موطن جديد للعديد من المصريين. تعكس العلمين الجديدة رؤية مصر للتقدم، موضحة كيف يمكن للابتكار والتخطيط أن يحولا الصحراء إلى مدينة حديثة مفعمة بالحيوية ومليئة بالحياة.

Reading

A flyer about a famous place in Egypt

منشور عن مكان مشهور في مصر

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Description:

الوصف:

Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex in the city of Luxor. It was built to honor the god Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt. The temple is known for its giant statues, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics. Visitors can walk through its grand gates and imagine life in ancient Egypt. It remains one of the country's most remarkable symbols of history and culture.



معبد الأقصر هو مجمع أثري رائع في مدينة الأقصر. تم بناؤه لتكريم الإله آمون وفراعنة مصر العظماء. يشتهر المعبد بتمائيله العملاقة وأعمدته الحجرية الطويلة وكتاباته الهيروغليفية الجميلة. ويمكن للزوار المشي عبر أبوابه الكبرى وتخيل الحياة في مصر القديمة، ويظل أحد أبرز رموز التاريخ والثقافة في البلاد.



Note

Writing a flyer

- Your flyer must include:

المنشور يجب أن يتضمن:

1- **Main Header:** name of the place.

١- **العنوان الرئيسي:** اسم المكان.

2- **Description (3-5 sentences):** include history, importance, and facts.

٢- **الوصف (٣ : ٥ جمل):** يتضمن التاريخ و الأهمية و الحقائق.

3- **Pictures or Drawings:** make it colorful and eye-catching.

٣- **الصور والرسومات:** اجعلها ملونة ولافتة للانتباه.

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex in Luxor. ()
- 2- It was built to honor the god Ramsis. ()
- 3- The temple has tall stone columns. ()
- 4- You can walk through grand gates and imagine life in ancient Egypt. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- New Alamein City history, beauty, and modern life.
a) disappears b) combines c) destroys d) damages
- 2- The Luxor Temple has statues and tall stone columns.
a) giant b) small c) smart d) modern
- 3- We plant trees to the soil.
a) rich b) richen c) enrich d) ensure
- 4- They used to visit the temples.
a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(columns - beaches - progress - coastal - designed)

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern (1)..... cities. The city is (2)..... to be a smart place that combines history and modern life. Visitors can enjoy peaceful (3)....., luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees. New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for (4).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is a source of pride for Egyptians. Over the last few years, Egypt has done many great projects including, building new cities everywhere. The New Capital, New Alamein, and Al Galala all reflect Egypt's determination to be a leading country. New cities are designed to be smart, green, and beautiful. They have wide streets, luxury hotels, beautiful walkways, and green areas. They use clean energy like solar power. Egypt not only builds new cities, but it also ensures that we have a fascinating heritage.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The text is about Egypt's
 a) new cities b) temples c) seas d) towers
- 2- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a) Al Galala b) Egypt c) New Alamein d) Cairo

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What do the new cities reflect?

.....

- 4- How are the new cities designed?

.....

- 5- What does Egypt ensure?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- What did you (using) to read?
- 2- Heavy rain can (dark) the color of the sand.

3- The temple was built to (**honored**) the god Amun.

4- Visitors can (**walking**) through its grand gates.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- complex - Luxor Temple - magnificent - is - ancient - a .

2- build - bridges - strong - The country - and roads - used to .

3- northern - lies - The city - coast - the - on .

4- known - is - for - The temple - its - statues - giant .

7 Punctuate the following.

New alamein is a smart city

she didn't use to draw

8 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"New Alamein City".

(**beaches – roads**)

Review on unit

4

Important vocabulary

infrastructure	البنية التحتية	textile	منسوجات / النسيج
determination	إصرار / عزيمة	manufacture	يصنع / صناعة
highway	طريق سريع	steel industry	صناعة الصلب
innovation	ابتكار / إبداع	power source	مصدر طاقة
goods	بضائع	industrial	صناعي
transportation	وسائل النقل	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
economy	اقتصاد	products	منتجات
investment	استثمار	export	تصدير
progress	التقدم	fabrics	قمماش
government	الحكومة	enrich	يثرى / يبغي
power supplies	مصادر إمداد الطاقة	enlarge	يوسع / يكبر
construction	بناء / إنشاء	encourage	يشجع
zone	منطقة	widen	يوسع
tourism	السياحة	darken	يظلم / يعتم
trade	التجارة	soften	يخفف
technology	تكنولوجيا	beauty	جمال
furniture	أثاث	coastal cities	مدن سياحية
firewood	حطب / وقود الخشب	hieroglyphics	الكتابة الهيروغليفية
stone columns	أعمدة حجرية	complex	مجمع / مجموعة مباني

Important adjectives

modern / new	حديث / جديد	growing	متزايد
crowded	مزدحم	peaceful	هادئ
connected	متصل	luxury	فاخر
local	محلي	sandy	رملي
giant	عملاق	magnificent	مهييب / فخيم
lively	حيوي / مليء بالحياة	remarkable	استثنائي / بارز
grand	كبير	self-reliant	معتمد على نفسه

Unit 4

Important verbs

connect (ed)
improve (d)
succeed (ed)
develop (ed)
transport (ed)
produce (d)
import (ed)
believe (d)
remain (ed)

يوصل / يربط
يحسن
ينجح
يطور
ينقل
ينتج
يستورد
يؤمن
يظل

Regular verbs

depend (ed) / rely (ied)
create (d)
include (d)
support (ed)
combine (d)
reflect (ed)
honor (ed)
imagine (d)
extend (ed)

يعتمد
ينشأ / يخلق
يشتمل / يتضمن
يدعم
يدمج
يعكس
يكرم
يتخيل
يتوسع

Important paragraphs

Egypt's projects

Egypt has started new infrastructure projects in recent years. These are projects and services, such as transportation and power supplies. Skilled engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels that connect all parts of the country. Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster and transport goods easily. Egypt's investment in infrastructure shows its efforts towards projects to progress and the well-being of its people.

Egypt's industries

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. People used to depend mainly on farming and small local jobs. Most villages didn't use to have factories or machines, and transportation used to be slow. The textile industry in cities like Mahalla produces high-quality clothes and fabrics. Egypt has developed a steel industry, which helps build new roads, bridges, and houses. New power resources such as natural gas, solar energy, and wind energy are being used to create clean power for homes and factories.

Egypt past and present

Egypt used to depend mostly on farming, and most people worked in fields or small local shops. There weren't many factories, and people didn't use to have machines to make goods quickly. But today, Egypt has developed many new industries. The textile factories produce clothes and fabrics that are sold across the country and even abroad. Engineers use solar and wind power to create clean energy.

New Alamein City

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern coastal cities. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees. New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress.

Important language

Used to اعتاد ان

- تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي وأصبحت لا تحدث الآن.

المصدر + used to + الفاعل

- التكوين

Ex: - I used to ride a bike.

المصدر + didn't use to + الفاعل

- النفي

Ex: - Ahmed didn't use to live in a big city.

Did + المصدر + use to + الفاعل ?

- السؤال بهل

Ex: - Did you use to have a car?

- Yes, I used to have a car.

- No, I didn't use to have a car.

Exercise on language

(S.B) **Complete the sentences using (used to / didn't use to / Did ... use to).**

- 1- Egyptians depend mainly on farming before the new industries appeared.
- 2- People have factories or modern machines in small towns.
- 3- engineers build new bridges and tunnels in the past?
- 4- The country rely on solar and wind energy years ago.
- 5- Workers have advanced equipment like they do today.

(S.B) **Complete each word with en_ or _en.**

- 1- The teacher will (large) the text so we can see it better.
- 2- Parents should (courage) their children every day.
- 3- Clouds began to (dark) the sky before the storm.
- 4- Good schools can (rich) a whole village.
- 5- The government plans to (wide) the roads next year.

General Test on unit 4

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Ali traveled to Aswan last weekend. ()
- 2- Ali visited Luxor Temple. ()
- 3- The temple was built to honor the god Amun. ()
- 4- The temple is known for its giant gates. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- used to be slow in the past.
a) Farming b) Transportation c) Factories d) Teaching
- 2- To manufacture is to produce goods using
a) cars b) roads c) machines d) phones
- 3- I to help my uncle on the farm.
a) use b) using c) used d) uses
- 4- We didn't to sleep late.
a) used b) use to c) using to d) use

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(school - tunnels - infrastructure - efforts - searching)

Our teacher asked us to do a project about the new (1)..... projects Egypt has started in recent years. I started by (2)..... the internet. I saw photos of new modern highways, bridges, and (3)..... connect all parts of the country. These projects show Egypt's (4)..... towards progress.

Unit 4

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt builds new cities to be a modern country. One of these cities is the New Alamein City. It lies on the beautiful northern coast. The city design combines history, beauty, and modern life. It has sandy beaches and luxury hotels to stay in. You can also enjoy its walkways, which are filled with palm trees. The city includes universities and shopping centers. The city shows how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern, lively city.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a) Egypt b) New Alamein c) desert d) beach
- 2- The walkways are filled with
a) flowers b) beaches c) palm trees d) sand

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the text about?

.....

- 4- Where is New Alamein City located?

.....

- 5- How can innovation and planning help our country?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- traffic - reduce - Engineers - enlarge - will - to - roads .

.....

- 2- easier - How - projects - travel - these - made - have ?

.....



6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- I (don't) use to read about history.

2- The teachers (uses) to help us.

7 Punctuate the following.

did you use to do sports when you were seven

.....

I visited the new Alamein City last weekend

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"New cities".

(engineers - smart)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test on unit 4

1 Read and complete the dialog.

(Is - Can - project - power - highways - What)

Ali : What are you doing?

Ahmed: I'm doing a (1).....

Ali : What is it about?

Ahmed: It's about infrastructure projects in Egypt.

Ali : (2)..... is infrastructure?

Ahmed: They are projects such as transportation and (3)..... supplies.

Ali : (4)..... you give me examples?

Ahmed: Yes, I can. Bridges, modern (5)....., and tunnels.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- I (**using**) to sleep early.

2- We (**don't**) use to eat too many sweets.

3- What did you (**using**) to do?

4- She used to (**playing**) chess.

5- I used (**for**) write fast.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- Engineers are working on a new

- a) drinks b) highway c) food d) farming

2- The temple is..... for its giant statues.

- a) made b) known c) done d) brought

3- My sister has She has great ideas.

- a) extend b) innovation c) power d) amazed

- 4- The industry produces fabric and clothes.
 a) farming b) textile c) food d) water
- 5- Many villages didn't use to have
 a) fields b) cotton c) factories d) farms
- 6- I to get full marks in exams.
 a) use b) using c) used d) uses
- 7- We used animals on our farm.
 a) has b) have c) to have d) having
- 8- My uncle use to sleep late.
 a) don't b) wasn't c) didn't d) weren't
- 9- I to be the first. I studied very hard.
 a) used b) didn't used c) use d) using

4 Read and circle the odd one out, then replace it with the correct word.

- 1- yellow - green - old - blue (.....)
- 2- old - ancient - tall - street (.....)
- 3- village - food - school - hospital (.....)
- 4- bathroom - kitchen - TV - dining room (.....)
- 5- doctor - school - nurse - teacher (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Most people used to work in fields or small local shops in the past. Now, they work in textile factories that produce clothes and fabric. Engineers work in modern projects that use solar and wind power to create clean energy. That energy doesn't pollute the environment and keeps it clean, so we must use this energy to help our planet.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Most people used to work in textile factories in the past. ()
- 2- Teachers work in modern projects that use clean energy. ()
- 3- Solar energy doesn't pollute the environment. ()

B Choose the correct answer.

- 4- Solar energy keeps our planet
a) polluted b) clean c) sad d) tired
- 5- energy doesn't pollute the environment
a) Oil b) Gas c) Wind d) Dirty

6 Write a paragraph of five sentences using the words below: "Energy".

(wind - clean - pollute - planet - use)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Safe and Smart Transportation for Egypt's Future

النقل الآمن والذكي لمستقبل مصر

Unit Five



Objectives

Vocabulary :

announcement, ticket machine, elevator,
escalator, digital screen, pay by card,
smart doors, monorail, electric bus, LED lights,
eco-friendly, goods, pollution, self-driving,
renewable energy

Language :

First Conditional

Life Skills :

- Smart Planning
- Urban Awareness

Values :

- Collaboration

Integrated Learning Activities:

A brochure about transportation 2050

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



announcement
إعلان



passengers
ركاب / مسافرين



escalator
سلم كهربائي



ticket machine
ماكينة تذاكر



elevator
مصعد



digital screen
شاشة رقمية



pay by card
الدفع بالبطاقة



smart doors
أبواب ذكية

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

Cairo Metro
Line 3
the Green Line
stop
next
faster
cleaner
train
inside
automatically
price
coins
electric
shopping center
bus route

مترو القاهرة station
الخط الثالث time
الخط الصديق للبيئة cash
محطة توقف access
التالي lights
أسرع LED
أنظف environment
قطار information
داخل / بالداخل moving platform
آلياً / تلقائياً building
ثمن / سعر paper pass
عملات staircase
كهربائي better
مركز تسوق Arabic
طريق الاتوبيس English

محطة
وقت
نقدي
وصول
أضواء
أنوار ليد
بيئة
معلومات
منصة متحركة
مبنى
تصريح ورقي / تذكرة
سلم
أفضل
لغة عربية
لغة انجليزية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
open	يفتح	opened	يغلق
use	يستخدم	used	يوفر
stop	يقف	stopped	

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
pay	يدفع	paid
hear	يسمع	heard
sell	يبيع	sold
give	يعطي	given
ride	يركب	ridden
make	يجعل	made

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

go up and down
slower than before

يذهب لأعلى ولأسفل
أبطأ من قبل

welcome to
stand back from

مرحبًا بكم في
ابتعد عن

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

ticket machine

a machine where you buy tickets

ماكينة التذاكر: آلة تشتري منها التذاكر

announcement

speaking to give information to many people

إعلان: محادثة لإعطاء معلومات لكثير من الناس

digital screen

an electric device for showing words or pictures

شاشة رقمية: جهاز كهربائي لعرض كلمات أو صور

elevator

a moving platform that goes up or down in a building

مصعد: منصة متحركة تذهب لأعلى ولأسفل داخل مبنى

escalator

a moving staircase

سلم متحرك: هو درج متحرك

smart doors

doors that open and close automatically

أبواب ذكية: أبواب تفتح وتغلق آلياً

Activities on Vocab.



Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- A / An means speaking to give information to many people.
a) elevator b) escalator c) announcement d) car
- 2- A / An is a machine where you buy tickets.
a) elevator b) ticket machine c) stairs d) book
- 3- A / An is a moving staircase.
a) escalator b) ticket machine c) station d) elevator
- 4- Smart doors are doors that open and close
a) by hand b) automatically c) badly d) naturally



Main points

- 1- The Giza Metro is now faster than before.
١- مترو الجيزة الآن أسرع من قبل.
- 2- New trains have smart doors and big digital screens to show stations and time.
٢- القطارات الجديدة بها أبواب ذكية وشاشات رقمية كبيرة لعرض المحطات والوقت.
- 3- At Giza Station, there are new ticket machines.
٣- في محطة الجيزة يوجد ماكينات تذاكر جديدة.
- 4- You can pay by card, phone, or cash.
٤- يمكنك أن تدفع عن طريق بطاقة أو هاتف أو نقداً.
- 5- There are elevators and escalators for easy access.
٥- يوجد مصاعد وسلالم متحركة لسهولة الوصول.
- 6- The metro uses smart electricity and LED lights.
٦- يستخدم المترو الكهرباء الذكية وأضواء ليد.
- 7- Smart means using technology to work better and faster.
٧- ذكي يعني استخدام التكنولوجيا ليعمل بشكل أفضل وأسرع.

Reading: Next Stop, Giza

"Good morning, passengers. Welcome to the Cairo Metro. This is Line 3, the Green Line. The next stop is Giza Station.

صباح الخير أيها المسافرين. مرحباً بكم في مترو القاهرة. هذا الخط الثالث، الخط الصديق للبيئة. محطة التوقف التالية هي محطة الجيزة.

The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner than before. New trains have smart doors that open and close automatically. Inside the train, there are big digital screens. They show the next station and the time. You can also hear clear announcements in Arabic and English.

مترو الجيزة الآن أسرع وأنظف من ذي قبل. القطارات الجديدة بها أبواب ذكية تفتح وتغلق آلياً. داخل القطار، توجد شاشات رقمية كبيرة تعرض المحطة التالية والوقت. كما يمكنك سماع إعلانات واضحة باللغتين العربية والإنجليزية.

At Giza Station, there are new ticket machines. You can pay by card, a phone, or cash. There are also elevators and escalators for easy access.

في محطة الجيزة، توجد ماكينات تذاكر جديدة. يمكنك الدفع بالبطاقة أو الهاتف أو نقدًا. كما يوجد مصاعد وسلالم متحركة لسهولة الوصول.

The metro uses smart electricity. The lights are LED and the trains save electricity when they stop. This makes the metro better for the environment.

يستخدم المترو الكهرباء الذكية. الأضواء تعمل بتقنية LED، وتوفر القطارات الكهرباء عند توقفها. هذا يجعل المترو صديقاً للبيئة.

Please stand back from the doors. The next stop is Giza. Thank you for riding with us." يرجى الابتعاد عن الأبواب. المحطة التالية هي الجيزة. شكرًا لركوبك معنا.

S.B Listen again and write (T) true or (F) false.

- | | |
|--|-----|
| 1- The announcement is for Line 3. | () |
| 2- The metro is slower than before. | () |
| 3- Passengers can pay by card, phone, or cash. | () |
| 4- The trains save electricity when they stop. | () |
| 5- The announcements are only in English. | () |

Exercises

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- There are elevators and escalators at the station. ()
- 2- They were going to visit their aunt. ()
- 3- They paid by card for tickets. ()
- 4- There are small TVs at the metro. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The smart doors and close automatically.
a) open b) opens c) opened d) opening
- 2- We can see the next station and time on
a) elevators b) digital screens c) escalators d) machines
- 3- The new metro is better for the It uses electricity.
a) shop b) school c) environment d) house
- 4- The elevator is a moving that goes up and down in a building.
a) book b) taxi c) bus d) platform
- 5- Passengers can by card, phone, or cash.
a) paid b) pay c) pays d) paying
- 6- There are elevators and for easy access.
a) escalators b) phones c) TV d) tablet

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

(time - Metro - digital - automatically - passengers)

The metro lines have developed recently. The Giza (1)..... is faster and cleaner than before. New trains have modern technology like smart doors that open and close (2)..... Inside the train, there are big (3)..... screens that show the next station and time to help (4)..... travel easily.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cairo is a very big city with millions of people. Traveling was a big problem there in the past. The roads were narrow and crowded. Cars and buses filled the city with smoke. The country has started to solve the problem. Egypt has improved the metro as it is one of the most important transportation in Cairo. The metro lines now join most places in Cairo and Giza. It is now faster and cleaner than before with smart doors and digital screens. It is easier now to pay for the tickets by card, phone, or in cash. New metro lines use smart electricity to keep the environment clean.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1-The text is mainly about the
a) metro b) lights c) elevators d) escalators
- 2-The opposite of the underlined word "narrow" is
a) ride b) wide c) small d) faster

B Answer the following questions.

- 3-Why was traveling a problem in Cairo?
.....
- 4-How has the country started to solve the problem?
.....
- 5-How can you buy tickets?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1-The metro is now (fast) than before.
- 2-New trains (has) smart doors.
- 3-You can (paid) by card.
- 4-The metro (use) smart electricity.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- they - The - electricity - stop - when - save - trains .

2- staircase - The - moving - a - is - escalator .

3- better - the - is - for - Why - environment - metro - the ?

4- are - access - for - There - easy - elevators .

5- Station - Giza - The - stop - next - is

7 Punctuate the following.

the metro is very important now

You can pay by card phone, or cash

8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:

"Metro".

(passengers - ticket machine)

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

monorail	قطار أحادي (مونوريل)	easily	بسهولة
single track	مسار واحد (فردي)	smoke	دخان
transportation	نقل	safely	بأمان
system	نظام	properly	بشكل صحيح
smarter	أذكى	rules	قواعد
exciting	شيق / مثير	future	مستقبل
project	مشروع	seats	مقاعد
way	طريقة	petrol	بنزين
important	هام	cinema	سينما
restaurant	مطعم	playground	ملعب
shop	محل	free	مجاني

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
block يسد / يحجب	blocked	connect يصل	connected
travel يسافر / يتنقل	traveled	follow يتبع	followed
listen يستمع	listened	improve يحسن	improved
stay يبقى	stayed	move ينتقل	moved

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
sit يجلس	sat	sat
become يصبح	became	become
run on يسير على	ran on	run on
eat يأكل	ate	eaten
drink يشرب	drank	drunk

above the ground
will be allowed
better for

فوق الأرض
سيكون مسموح
أفضل لـ

Activities on Vocab.

Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- Electric buses run on
a) petrol b) electricity c) gas d) fire
- 2- If passengers block the smart doors, they won't be
a) dangerous b) fast c) safe d) bad
- 3- You can find ticket machines and at the monorail station.
a) playground b) digital screens c) cinema d) cars
- 4- The monorail will important places quickly.
a) connect b) block c) sit d) stay



Main points

- 1- Egypt is changing the way people travel.
١- مصر تغير الطريقة التي يتنقل بها الناس.
- 2- The monorail is a train that runs on a single track above the ground.
٢- المونوريل هو قطار يسير على مسار واحد فوق الأرض.
- 3- At each station, passengers will find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements.
٣- في كل محطة، الركاب سيجدون ماكينات تذاكر وشاشات رقمية وإعلانات.
- 4- Some stations have elevators and escalators to travel easily.
٤- بعض المحطات بها مصاعد وسلالم متحركة للتنقل بسهولة.
- 5- Passengers must buy tickets. They mustn't block the smart doors.
٥- يجب أن يشتري الركاب تذاكر. لا يجب أن يسدوا الأبواب الذكية.
- 6- The monorail will help the environment because it runs on electricity.
٦- المونوريل سوف يساعد البيئة لأنه يسير بالكهرباء.
- 7- People will stay safe if they stand or sit properly.
٧- سوف يبقى الناس آمنين إذا وقفوا أو جلسوا بشكل مناسب.

Reading: Egypt's New Monorail and Electric Buses

Egypt is changing the way people travel. If these new transportation systems continue to grow in Cairo and Giza, the cities will become faster, cleaner, and smarter.

تغير مصر طريقة تنقل الناس. إذا استمر نمو أنظمة النقل الجديدة هذه في القاهرة والجيزة، ستصبح المدينتان أسرع وأنظف وأذكى.

One exciting project is the monorail, a train that runs on a single track above the ground. It will connect important places quickly. At each station, passengers will find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. Some stations also have elevators and escalators, so people will travel more easily.

واحد من المشاريع المثيرة للاهتمام مشروع المونوريل، وهو قطار يسير على مسار واحد فوق الأرض. سيربط هذا القطار الأماكن المهمة بسرعة. سيجد الركاب في كل محطة ماكينات تذاكر وشاشات رقمية وإعلانات. كما تحتوي بعض المحطات على مصاعد وسلالم متحركة، لكي يتنقل الناس بسهولة أكثر.

Passengers must buy a ticket and listen to announcements. They mustn't block the smart doors. The electric bus will help the environment because it runs on electricity and makes no smoke. Passengers will be able to pay by card or phone. The bus has smart doors and bright LED lights.

يجب على الركاب شراء تذكرة والاستماع إلى الإعلانات. يجب عليهم عدم حجب الأبواب الذكية. سيساعد الأتوبيس الكهربائي البيئة لأنه يعمل بالكهرباء ولا يصدر دخاناً. سيتمكن الركاب من الدفع بالبطاقة أو الهاتف. الحافلة بها أبواب ذكية ومصابيح ليد ساطعة.

People will stay safe if they stand or sit properly, but they won't follow the rules if they eat or drink on the bus. With the monorail and electric buses, Egypt will move smartly into the future.

سيبقى الناس آمنين إذا وقفوا أو جلسوا بشكل صحيح، لكنهم لن يتبعوا القواعد إذا تناولوا الطعام أو الشرب في الحافلة. مع المونوريل والحافلات الكهربائية، ستتحرك مصر بذكاء نحو المستقبل.

S.B Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- If Egypt keeps improving transportation, Cairo and Giza will become smarter cities. ()
- 2- Passengers will find ticket machines and digital screens at the stations. ()
- 3- The electric bus makes a lot of smoke. ()
- 4- Eating or drinking on the bus will be allowed. ()
- 5- The new transportation systems will help the environment. ()

Conditional

الجملة الشرطية

Form

- تتكون الجملة الشرطية كالتالي:

If + condition (جملة الشرط) , **result** (جملة النتيجة)

Ex: If I have time, I will exercise.

Usage

First conditional

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

- تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن مواقف محتملة في المستقبل.



Affirmative

الجملة المثبتة

If + present simple , **subject + will ('ll) + inf****I** + فاعل جمع + **inf**

(فاعل)

(مصدر)

(s / es / ies) + فعل + فاعل مفردEx: - If you **follow** the rules, you **will stay** safe.- If she **takes** the monorail, she **will arrive** faster.- يمكن أن تأتي **if** في الوسط (ولا تضع ,)**Subject + will + inf + if + present simple**Ex: - The air **will be** clean if we **use** electric buses.- I'll **go** to the beach tomorrow if the weather **is** good.

Negative

النفى

- عند النفي لا يشترط نفي الجملتين يمكن نفي إحداهما فقط.

If + فاعل + (don't / doesn't) + (inf) , **won't + inf**Ex: - If you **don't play** well, you **won't win** the game.- If he **doesn't have** cash, he **will use** his card.- We **won't arrive** on time if we **walk** slowly.- They **won't come** to the party if they **aren't** well.

Check your language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- If you (sleeps) early, you will get up early.
- 2- If she follows the rules, she will (is) safe.
- 3- If you take the monorail, you will (arriving) faster.
- 4- If he (rode) the bus, he won't be late.
- 5- We (save) time if we use the metro.
- 6- If they (not block) smart doors, they will be safe.
- 7- He won't pass the exams if he (not study) hard.

S.B Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb:

- 1- If we (use) the electric bus, the air (be) cleaner.
- 2- If the passenger (listen) to the announcement, he (know) the next stop.
- 3- If passengers (block) the smart doors, the train (not start).
- 4- If Egypt (build) more monorails, people (travel) faster.
- 5- If your dad (pay) by card, he (save) time.

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- buses are better for the environment.
a) Petrol b) Gas c) Fast d) Electric
- 2- If the passengers block the smart doors, they be safe.
a) aren't b) don't c) will d) won't
- 3- You can find and digital screens at the monorail stations.
a) buses b) ticket machines c) temples d) goods

4- If you louder, I will hear you.

- a) speaks b) speak c) spoken d) spoke

5- The monorail runs on a single above the ground.

- a) way b) track c) ground d) sky

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

(escalators - bus - become - track - monorail)

New transportation systems continue to grow in big cities in Egypt. These cities (1) faster, cleaner, and smarter day after day. The (2) is the newest transportation that runs on a single (3) At the monorail station, you can find ticket machines and digital screens. Some stations have elevators and (4) to help people travel easily.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our country is on its way to have a bright future. Egypt has started many new projects in all fields. We ensure that we can continue. Projects in transportation have made traveling much easier and transporting goods safer. New roads connect the country from north to south and from east to west. We have electric buses that help the environment. The monorail is the most interesting project. It's fast, clean, and exciting. It has modern technology in trains and stations. Smart screens, smart doors, ticket machines, elevators and escalators, are all found in this great project.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

- a) bus b) road c) goods d) monorail

2- Egypt has started new in all fields.

- a) screens b) machines c) projects d) elevators

B Answer the following questions.

3- What have projects in transportation made?

.....

4- What technology does the monorail have?

.....

5- What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- stay - people - properly, - safe - will - If - stand - they .

.....

2- into - Egypt - future - the - will - smartly - move .

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- If they eat on the buses, they (aren't) follow the rules.

2- People will travel faster if Egypt (build) more monorails.

6 Punctuate the following.

If I go to cairo i will ride the metro.

.....

What can passengers find at Cairo station

.....

7 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:

"The new monorail".

(electricity – single track)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

eco-friendly
صديق للبيئةpollution
تلوثself-driving
قيادة ذاتيةrenewable energy
طاقة متجددة

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

planet	كوكب	computer	كمبيوتر / حاسوب
vehicles	مركبات	road	طريق
air	هواء	driver	سائق
electric buses	اتوبيسات كهربائية	red lights	إشارات مرور حمراء
fuel	وقود	accident	حادثة
less	أقل	country	دولة
noise	ضوضاء	natural sources	مصادر طبيعية
fresh	نقي	sun	شمس
camera	كاميرا	water	ماء
solar power	طاقة شمسية	generations	أجيال
wind power	طاقة الرياح	diesel	ديزل
human	البشر	Earth	كوكب الأرض

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
slow	يبطئ slowed	harm	يضر harmed
reduce	يقلل reduced	move	يتحرك / يتنقل moved
avoid	يتجنب avoided	power	يشغل powered
protect	يحمي protected	control	يتحكم controlled

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
run out	ينفذ	ran out	run out
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

eco-friendly

don't harm the environment

صديق للبيئة: لا يضر البيئة

self-driving

cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver

قيادة ذاتية: سيارات تستخدم الكاميرات والكمبيوتر لتنتقل بأمان على الطرق بدون سائق

renewable energy

comes from natural sources like the sun, wind, and never runs out

طاقة متجددة: تأتي من مصادر طبيعية مثل الشمس والرياح ولا تنفذ أبداً

Activities on Vocab.

Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Cars that don't harm the environment are called
a) fuel b) fresh c) eco-friendly d) bad
- cars can move without a driver.
a) Self-driving b) Robot c) Human d) TV
- Reducing helps keep the air clean.
a) wind b) pollution c) sun d) Earth
- Solar and wind power are examples of
a) fuel-energy b) oil c) renewable energy d) ground
- Self-driving cars can avoid
a) accidents b) planet c) generations d) roads



Main points

- 1- People will travel in smarter and cleaner ways in the future.
١- سوف ينتقل الناس بطرق أذكى وأنظف في المستقبل.
- 2- Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly. They don't harm the environment.
٢- كثير من المركبات الجديدة سوف تصبح صديقة للبيئة. إنها لا تضر البيئة.
- 3- They help reduce pollution in cities.
٣- إنها تساعد في تقليل التلوث في المدن.
- 4- Self-driving cars use cameras and computers to move without a driver.
٤- سيارات القيادة الذاتية تستخدم كاميرات وحواسيب آلية لتحرك بدون سائق.
- 5- They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid accidents.
٥- إنها تستطيع أن تتوقف في الإشارات الحمراء وإبطاء السرعة للمشاة وتتجنب الحوادث.
- 6- Many countries use renewable energy that comes from natural sources.
٦- كثير من الدول تستخدم الطاقة المتجددة التي تأتي من مصادر طبيعية.
- 7- We can help reduce pollution and protect Earth for future generations.
٧- يمكننا أن نساعد في تقليل التلوث وحماية الأرض للأجيال المستقبلية.

Reading

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly, which means they do not harm the environment. For example, electric buses and trains use less fuel and make less noise. This helps reduce pollution in cities and keeps the air fresh for everyone.

في المستقبل، سيسافر الناس بطرق أذكى وأنظف. العديد من المركبات الجديدة أصبحت صديقة للبيئة، والذي يعني أنها لا تضر البيئة. على سبيل المثال، تستخدم الحافلات والقطارات الكهربائية وقوداً أقل وتصدر ضوضاء أقل. هذا يُساعد على تقليل التلوث في المدن ويحافظ على الهواء نقي للجميع.

Some cars today are even self-driving. These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid accidents. In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more safely and easily. Many countries are also using renewable energy to power their transportation. Renewable energy comes from natural sources like the sun, wind, and water. It never runs out and is better for our planet than petrol or diesel.

بعض السيارات اليوم ذاتية القيادة. تستخدم هذه السيارات كاميرات وأجهزة كمبيوتر للتنقل بأمان على الطريق بدون سائق. يمكنها التوقف عند الإشارات الحمراء، وإبطاء السرعة للمشاة، وتجنب الحوادث. في المستقبل، قد تساعد السيارات ذاتية القيادة الناس على التنقل بأمان وسهولة أكبر. كما تستخدم العديد من الدول الطاقة المتجددة لتشغيل وسائل النقل. تأتي الطاقة المتجددة من مصادر طبيعية كالشمس والرياح والماء. إنها لا تنفذ أبدًا، وهي أفضل لكونها من البنزين أو الديزل.

If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation and uses renewable energy, the world will become a cleaner and safer place. Together, we can help reduce pollution and protect Earth for future generations.

إذا اختار الجميع وسائل نقل صديقة للبيئة واستخدموا الطاقة المتجددة، سيصبح العالم مكانًا أنظف وأكثر أمانًا. معًا، يمكننا المساعدة في تقليل التلوث وحماية الأرض للأجيال القادمة.

Answer the following questions.

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

1- What does "eco-friendly" mean?

.....

2- How do self-driving cars move safely?

.....

3- What are two examples of renewable energy?

.....

4- Why is renewable energy good for our planet?

.....

5- What can people do to help reduce pollution?

.....

Triphthongs

It is a vowel sound that combines three vowel sounds together in one syllable. - هو صوت متحرك يجمع ثلاثة أصوات متحركة معًا في مقطع لفظي واحد.

1. ow - er

Ex: hour, our, flower

2. ay - er

Ex: layer, player, mayor

Write each word in the correct column.

اكتب كل كلمة في العمود الصحيح.

(our - layer - tower - player - flower)

(ow-er)	(ay-er)
.....	
.....	
.....	

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly. ()
- 2- The new vehicles harm the environment. ()
- 3- Electric buses use more fuel. ()
- 4- They help increase pollution in cities. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- means they don't harm the environment.
a) Eco-friendly b) Pollution c) Passenger d) Traffic
- 2- Self-..... cars use cameras and computers.
a) sleeping b) driving c) reading d) riding
- 3- The energy, which comes from the sun and water, is energy.
a) oil b) renewable c) gas d) harm
- 4- If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation, the world will cleaner and safer.
a) becoming b) became c) become d) becomes
- 5- We should pollution and protect the Earth.
a) reducing b) reduces c) reduce d) reduced

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

(pollution - smarter - noise - harm - good)

In the future, people will travel in (1)..... and cleaner ways. Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly, which means they don't (2)..... the environment. For example, electric buses and trains use less fuel and produce less (3)..... in cities and keep the air fresh.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cleaner transportation is very important for having a cleaner planet. By turning into electric vehicles instead of fuel, we can help reduce pollution. We should also encourage cycling and walking to save energy. These also improve our health and slow climate change. Using renewable energy like solar and wind

power is better for our planet. Together, countries can create more eco-friendly ways to save the planet and protect it for future generations.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a) vehicles b) energy c) climate d) planet
- 2- We should cycling and walking.
a) encourage b) reduce c) avoid d) help

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the main idea of the text?

.....

- 4- Why should we protect the planet?

.....

- 5- What can countries do together?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- do - How - safely - self-driving - move - cars ?

.....

- 2- Using - pollution - energy - help - renewable - can - reduce .

.....

- 3- trains - and - Electric - use - less - buses - fuel .

.....

- 4- driver - a human - can - Self-driving cars - move - without .

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- If my sister (**study**) hard, she will get high marks.
- 2- Electric buses (**reduces**) pollution.
- 3- If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation, the world (**did**) become a cleaner place.
- 4- Have you ever (**hear**) about self-driving cars?

7 Punctuate the following.

we should protect the Earth

.....

what does eco-friendly mean

.....

8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:
"Cleaner transportation".

(renewable energy - self-driving)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

vision	رؤية	mobile apps	تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول
idea	فكرة	digital signs	لافتات رقمية
underground	تحت الأرض	seat belt	حزام أمان
comfortably	بطريقة مريحة	crowded	مزدحم
street	شارع	magazine	مجلة
quieter	أهدأ	future Egypt	مصر المستقبلية
technology	تكنولوجيا	brochure	منشور
cover page	صفحة الغلاف	creative way	طريقة إبداعية
benefits	فوائد	skills	مهارات
green	صديق للبيئة	minute	دقيقة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present		Past / P.P	Present		Past / P.P
design	يصمم	designed	carry	يحمل	carried
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	present	يقدم	presented

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
build	يبني	built	built
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

in just minutes	خلال دقائق فقط
wait in line	ينتظر في طابور
excited about	متحمس لـ
doing well	بخير

Check your Vocab.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The station has digital to help the passengers.
a) skills b) signs c) street d) idea
- 2- What's your for Egypt's future?
a) vision b) minute c) seat belt d) mobile
- 3- You must wear a in your car.
a) brochure b) magazine c) idea d) seat belt

How to write an email

كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

- Write **a greeting (Dear)** اكتب تحية مثل (عزيزي)
- Begin with **a friendly opening** ابدأ بجملة افتتاح ودودة
- Write **clear ideas** اكتب افكار واضحة
- End the email with **a positive closing** اختتم الإيميل بخاتمة إيجابية
- Use **punctuation and capital letters correctly** استخدم علامات الترقيم والحروف الكبيرة بشكل صحيح

From :	dina@students.com	عنوان الراسل	
To :	reem@students.com	عنوان المرسل إليه	
Subject :	air pollution	عنوان الموضوع	
Dear / Hi Reem,		تحية للمرسل إليه	
How are you? كيف حالك؟		مقدمة	
I'm happy to write to you. سعيد لأنني أكتب إليك.			
جمل الموضوع		الموضوع	
Write soon. اكتب قريباً	/	See you soon. أراك قريباً	جملة خاتمة
Best wishes! أطيب الأمنيات!	/	Bye for now! وداعاً الآن	
Hope to hear from you soon.		أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً	
Dina		توقيع الراسل	

Read the email

New Message

To : friend@example.com

Subject : My Vision for Egypt's Future transportation

Dear Nada,

عزيزتي ندى،

How are you? I hope you're doing well.

كيف حالك؟ أتمنى أن تكون بخير.

I want to tell you about my idea for Egypt's future transportation.

أريد أن أخبرك عن فكري لمستقبل النقل في مصر.

In the future, I imagine Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel.

في المستقبل، أتخيل أن مصر سيكون بها طرق سفر أسرع وأنظف وأذكى.

"There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably."

"وسوف تكون هناك قطارات كهربائية تحت الأرض تربط المدن في دقائق معدودة، وحافلات ذاتية القيادة تحمل الركاب بأمان وراحة."

"These vehicles will use renewable energy, so the air will be cleaner and the streets quieter, with much less pollution."

"ستستخدم هذه المركبات الطاقة المتجددة، وبالتالي سيكون الهواء أنظف والشوارع أكثر هدوءًا، مع تلوث أقل بكثير."

"Technology will also make travel easier."

"Passengers will pay for tickets using smart cards or mobile apps."

"ستسهل التكنولوجيا أيضًا السفر. سيدفع المسافرون ثمن تذاكرهم باستخدام البطاقات الذكية أو تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول."

"The stations will have digital signs in both English and Arabic to help travelers. People must wait in line, mustn't block the doors, and must wear seat belts in cars."

"المحطات سيكون بها لوحات رقمية باللغتين الإنجليزية والعربية لمساعدة المسافرين. يجب على الركاب الانتظار في طابور، وعدم سد الأبواب، وارتداء أحزمة الأمان في السيارات."

"If Egypt builds more eco-friendly transportation, the streets will be less crowded and the environment will be better for everyone."

"إذا قامت مصر بإنشاء المزيد من وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة، فإن الشوارع سوف تكون أقل ازدحامًا وستكون البيئة أفضل للجميع."

I'm really excited about this smart and green future!

أنا متحمسة جدًا لهذا المستقبل الذكي والصديق للبيئة!

Best wishes,

مع أطيب التمنيات،

Dina

دينا

Exercises

Lessons 4,5

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- There will be underground gas trains. ()
- 2- Self-driving buses will carry passengers safely. ()
- 3- These vehicles will use renewable energy. ()
- 4- The air will be cleaner and the streets will be noisy. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- People can buy tickets from
a) shops b) smart doors c) ticket machines d) bakery
- 2- Solar power a kind of renewable energy.
a) are b) were c) is d) be
- 3- Electric buses are eco-friendly and cause less
a) transportation b) pollution c) roads d) energy
- 4- Smarter vehicles help people faster.
a) traveled b) travels c) travel d) traveling
- 5- Eco-friendly transportation makes the future smart and
a) polluted b) green c) seat belt d) old

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

(line - smart - wear - signs - cars)

In the future our ways of traveling will change. Modern technology will help passengers pay for tickets using (1)..... cards or mobile apps. The stations will have digital (2)..... in both English and Arabic to help travelers. People must wait in (3)....., mustn't block the doors, and must (4)..... seat belts in cars.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- transportation - Egypt - build - must - more - eco-friendly .

.....

2- trains - Electric - renewable - use - energy - will .

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- He will win the game if he (trained) hard.
- 2- People must (waiting) in line.

6 Write an email of 60 words to your friend Adam about: "Egypt's future".

Your friend's email address is adam@gmail.com. Your name is Youssef. Your email address is yoyo@gmail.com.

New Message
—  

To :

Subject :

.....,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....,

.....

Important vocabulary

announcement	إعلان	vehicles	مركبات
passengers	ركاب	fuel	وقود
escalator	سلم كهربائي	wind power	طاقة رياح
ticket machine	آلة تذاكر	solar power	طاقة شمسية
elevator	مصعد	diesel	ديزل
digital screen	شاشة رقمية	comfortable	مريح
smart doors	أبواب ذكية	cover page	صفحة الغلاف
automatically	آلياً / أوتوماتيكياً	seat belt	حزام الأمان
bus route	طريق الأتوبيس	digital signs	لافتات رقمية
staircase	سلم	benefits	فوائد
electric	كهربائي	single track	مسار واحد
smart	ذكي	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
seats	مقاعد	self-driving	قيادته ذاتية
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	pollution	تلوث

Important verbs

imagine (d)	يتخيل	open (ed)	يفتح
close (d)	يغلق	save (d)	يوفر
block (ed)	يحجب / يسد	travel (ed)	يسافر
slow (ed)	يبطئ	reduce (d)	يقلل
design (ed)	يصمم	protect (ed)	يحمي
power (ed)	يشغل	control (led)	يتحكم

Irregular verbs

ride - rode - ridden	يركب	run out - ran out - ran out	ينفذ
run on - ran on - run on	يعمل بـ	choose - chose - chosen	يختار
build - built - built	يبني	pay - paid - paid	يدفع
understand - understood - understood			يفهم

Important paragraphs

Giza Metro

The Giza Metro was very slow in the past. Now, it's faster and cleaner. It has new trains that have smart doors and digital screens to show the next station and time. There are also ticket machines. You can pay by card or cash. It saves time. You can also find elevators and escalators that help you move comfortably and faster. The Giza Metro is one of the best ways to travel.

New Monorail

Now, Egypt is trying very hard to change the way people travel. The monorail is one of the best and most modern ways of transportation in Egypt. It's a train that runs on a single track above the ground. At the stations you can find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. It will help the environment because it runs on electricity. You can stay safe if you stand and sit properly.

Clear transportation

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Now, many vehicles are eco-friendly, so they don't harm the environment. They help reduce pollution in cities. Self-driving cars use cameras and computers to help them move safely and without a driver. It can also stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid accidents. They will use renewable energy that comes from nature. They will help reduce pollution.

Important language

If

إذا / لو

If مصدر + **will** + فاعل , مضارع بسيط

- If you use smart doors carefully, you will be safe.

النفي:

مصدر + **won't** + فاعل , مصدر + **don't / doesn't** + فاعل **If**

- If we don't use renewable energy, we won't protect the planet.

Exercises on language

1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- faster - take - If - you - will - the monorail, - you - arrive .
.....
- 2- he - time - will - If - pays - your dad - by card, - save .
.....
- 3- pass - If - hard, - won't - doesn't - he - he - the exams - study .
.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- If we (use) the metro, we (save) time.
- 2- If people (drive) electric cars, there (be) less pollution.
- 3- If Sama (forget) her ticket, she (buy) another one.
- 4- If Egypt (build) more monorails, people (travel) faster.
- 5- If passengers (block) the doors, the train (not start).

General Test on unit 5

🔊 الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner. (.....)
- 2- New trains in the Giza Metro have smart doors. (.....)
- 3- There are big digital screens in the Giza Metro. (.....)
- 4- The digital screen shows the price of the ticket. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- If you healthy food, you will be fit.
a) having b) has c) had d) have
- 2- The screen shows the next station and time.
a) mobile b) digital c) TV d) computer
- 3- I the weekend in Alexandria if I get good marks.
a) spend b) will spend c) would spend d) spends
- 4- Eco-friendly transportation doesn't the environment.
a) help b) save c) clean d) harm

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

(cars - inventions - renewable - sleep - live)

Now, there are many modern (1)..... One of these inventions is self-driving (2)..... They help people (3)..... more safely and easily. These cars use (4)..... energy to save the planet and help people live safely and happily. Everyone should help to protect our country from pollution and stop dangers.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Now, Egypt is using faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel. These ways will help our country. It also uses renewable energy in factories to reduce pollution. I imagine Egypt will have underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably. Passengers will pay for tickets using smart cards or mobile apps. The stations will have digital signs in both English and Arabic. The street will be less crowded and the environment will be better for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Egypt is using energy to reduce pollution.
a) polluted b) non-renewable c) renewable d) hot
- 2- The passengers will travel safely by trains.
a) self-driving b) electric c) old d) oil

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why are self-driving buses useful for passengers?
.....
- 4- How can passengers pay for tickets?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- If Egypt uses renewable energy, we (are) safer.
- 2- The streets will be less crowded if Egypt (build) more eco-friendly transportation.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- trains - There - be - underground - will - electric .

.....

2- Metro - The - faster - is - Giza - before - than .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

will smart transportation help egypt grow faster

.....

solar power is a kind of energy

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Monorail".

(digital screen - passengers)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test on unit 5

1 Read and complete the dialog.

(card - fast - Metro - windows - doors - have)

Sandy : Have you ever tried the Giza (1).....?

Merna : Yes, I (2)..... .

Sandy : How is the Giza Metro?

Merna : It's very (3)..... and comfortable.

Sandy : What can you see there?

Merna : There are digital screens and smart (4)..... .

Sandy : How can you pay for tickets?

Merna : By phone or (5)..... .

2 Read and write the correct form.

- 1- If you (sleeps) early, you will get up early.
- 2- You (are) healthy if you eat fruits and vegetables.
- 3- She will sleep early if she (finish) her homework.
- 4- She (have) studied her lessons.
- 5- The metro (help) reduce pollution in cities.

3 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The new metro is better and safer for our
a) school b) hospital c) environment d) water
- 2- Passengers can pay by card,, or cash.
a) TV b) phone c) screen d) smart door

- 3- If he on time, we will finish early.
a) arrive b) arrives c) arrived d) arriving
- 4- If we use electric buses, the air cleaner.
a) is b) be c) will be d) are
- 5- There digital screens and smart doors in the metro.
a) does b) was c) are d) is
- 6- The monorail on a single track above the ground.
a) runs b) running c) run d) ran
- 7- Transportation that uses renewable energy is
a) fuel b) eco-friendly c) robot d) wind
- 8- We should pollution and protect the Earth.
a) reduces b) reduce c) reducing d) reduced
- 9- is a kind of renewable energy.
a) Oil b) Gas c) Petrol d) Solar power
- 10- Self-driving buses carry safely.
a) road b) passengers c) water d) gas

4 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it.

- 1- smell - taste - hear - visit ()
- 2- saw - went - did - eat ()
- 3- smart doors - ticket machine - water - elevator ()
- 4- uncle - aunt - monorail - father ()
- 5- boil - gas - solar power - wind energy ()

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is improving transportation. The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner than before. New trains have smart doors that open and close automatically. Inside the train, there are big digital screens. They show the next station and time. You can also hear clear announcements in Arabic and English. At Giza Station, there are new ticket machines. You can pay by card, phone, or cash. There are also elevators and escalators in some stations.

A Read and write (T) true or (f) false.

- 1- The Giza Metro is faster and cleaner now. ()
- 2- There aren't any elevators in the Giza Metro. ()
- 3- The smart doors open and close by hand. ()

B Choose the correct answer.

- 4- show the next station and time.
a) Elevators b) Digital screens c) Smart doors d) Ticket machines
- 5- You can hear clear in Arabic and English at Giza Station.
a) environment b) buses c) train d) announcements

6 Write a paragraph of five sentences using the words below:

"Transportation".

(improve - renewable - smart - passengers - fast)

.....

.....

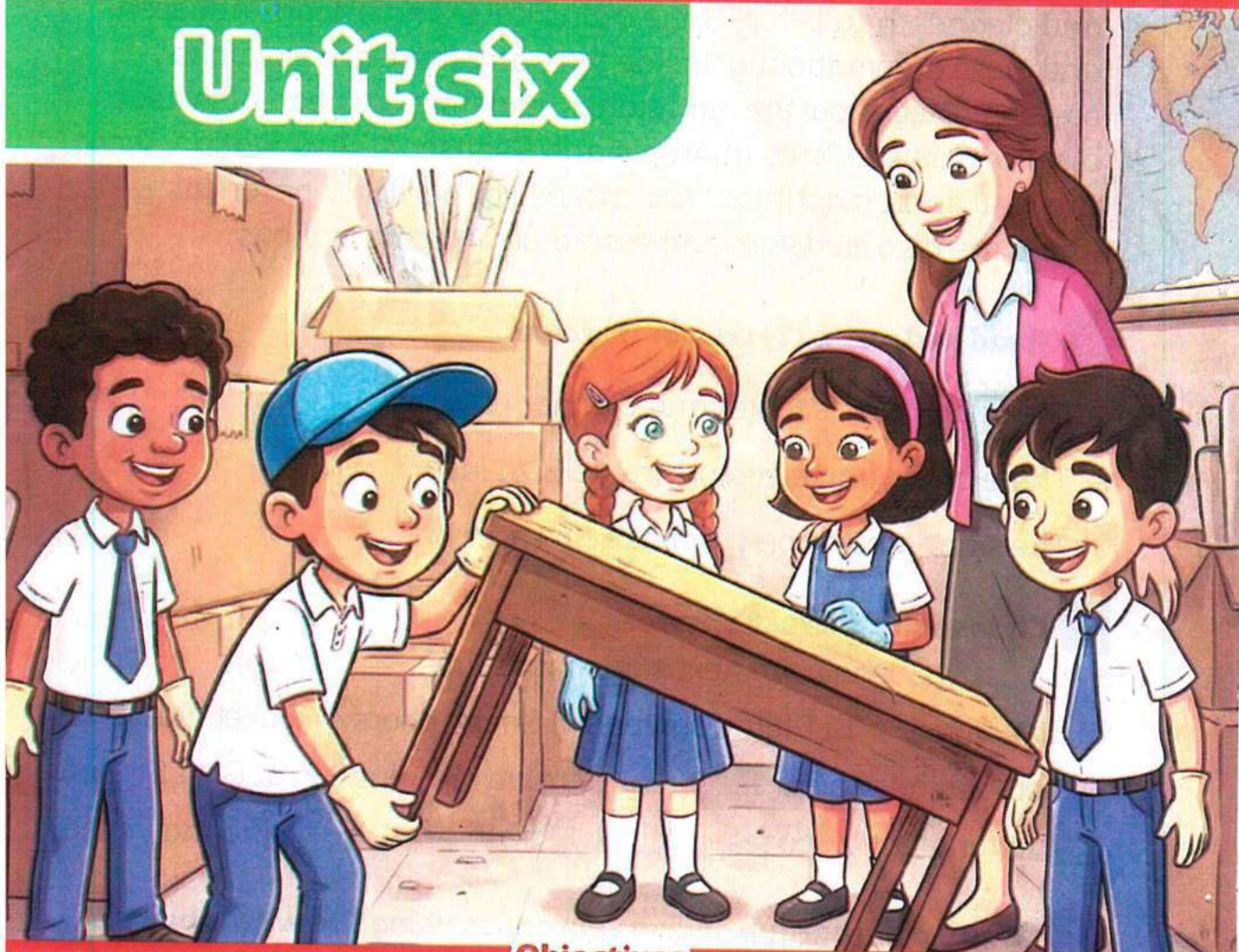
.....

.....

The Library That Time Forgot

المكتبة التي نسيها الزمن

Unit six



Objectives

Vocabulary :

fountain, clogged, stacks, library,
windmill, dust, storage, rusty, clinked,
creak, volunteers, town, pipe, treasure

Language :

- Past Simple
- Past Continuous

Life Skills :

- Responsibility
- Initiative

Values :

- Teamwork

The characters

الشخصيات



Ziad



Hana



Fady



Lara



Adam

The setting

المكان والزمان

Place: small town with colorful markets and friendly people, mainly the old, dusty library in the town square.

المكان: مدينة صغيرة بأسواق ملونة وناس ودودون، وبشكل أساسي في المكتبة القديمة المليئة بالغبار في ساحة المدينة

Time: one day

الوقت: يومًا ما

The moral of the story

الدرس المستفاد من القصة

- Working together and learning can help the community.

- العمل والتعلم سوياً يساعد المجتمع.

- Reading opens our minds.

- القراءة تفتح عقولنا.

Plot

الحبكة

The friends find an old key that opens a forgotten library. Inside, they discover books, maps, and letters. They use what they learn to help their town and reopen library.

- يجد الأصدقاء مفتاحًا قديمًا يفتح مكتبة منسية. في داخلها، يكتشفون كتبًا وخرائط ورسائل. يستخدمون ما تعلموه لمساعدة مدينتهم وإعادة فتح المكتبة.

Problem & Solution

المشكلة والحل

Problem: The library is closed and forgotten and the town's fountain is broken.

المشكلة: المكتبة مغلقة ومنسية ونافورة المدينة معطلة.

Solution: The children use knowledge from the library to fix the fountain and bring the library back to life.

الحل: يستخدم الأطفال المعرفة من المكتبة لإصلاح النافورة وإعادة الحياة إلى المكتبة.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



dust
تراب



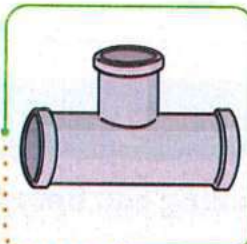
library
مكتبة



rusty
صدئة / صدئ



windmill
طاحونة هواء



pipe
ماسورة



plumber
سباك



treasure
كنز



fountain
نافورة



town
مدينة

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

friendly	ودود	bronze	برونزي
locked	مغلق	tag	بطاقة
shutters	فتحات خشبية	square	ميدان / ساحة
dust	غبار	heavy	ثقيل
steps	سلالم	slid into	يُدخل
storage room	مخزن	lock	قفل
clinked	أصدرت صوت طقة	creak	صوت صرير
hold up	يرفع	stream through	تدفق عبر
cracks	شقوق	shelves	أرفف
light up	تضيء	stacks	أكوام
collection	مجموعة	knowledge	معرفة
handwritten	مكتوبة بخط اليد	travelers	مسافرين
ribbon	شريطة	diagram	مخطط / رسم توضيحي
historical events	أحداث تاريخية	experiments	تجارب علمية
figured out	اكتشف	guide	دليل
discoveries	استكشافات	clogged	مسدود
school principal	مدير المدرسة	surprised	مندهش
alive	حي / به حياة	volunteer	متطوع
official	رسمي	ceremony	احتفال
reopening	إعادة فتح	minds	عقول

Regular verbs

Present	Past / P.P	Present	Past / P.P
gather	يجمع	gathered	unroll
exclaim	يصرخ	exclaimed	shape
exchange	يتبادل	exchanged	cheer
hurry	يسرع	hurried	sparkle
			يفرد / يفتح
			يشكل
			يصيح / يبتهج
			يلمع / يتلألأ
			unrolled
			shaped
			cheered
			sparkled

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Past participle
forget	ينسى	forgot
spread	ينتشر	spread
		forgotten
		spread

In the heart of a small town known for its colorful markets and friendly people, there stood an old library with locked doors and shuttered windows. Dust gathered on its steps, and most people had forgotten it was even there.

One warm afternoon, Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady were helping their teacher clean the school's storage room. As Ziad moved an old desk, a rusty object clinked onto the floor.

في قلب مدينة صغيرة معروفة بأسواقها الملونة وسكانها الودودون، كانت توجد مكتبة قديمة ذات أبواب مغلقة ونوافذ مغلقة. تجمع الغبار على درجات سلمها، ونسي معظم الناس أنها كانت موجودة حتى. بعد ظهر أحد الأيام الدافئة، كان آدم ولارا وزياذ وهنا وفادي يساعدون معلمتهم في تنظيف غرفة التخزين بالمدرسة. وبينما كان زياذ يحرك مكتب قديم، سقط جسم صدئ على الأرضية.





"Look, there's something shiny in the back of the desk. It's a key!" Lara exclaimed, holding it up. It was large and bronze, with a tag that read: Library.

"Do you think it could open the old library in the square?" Hana whispered. The friends exchanged excited looks. After school, they hurried to the library's heavy wooden doors. Fady slid the key into the lock. With a deep creak, the door was open. They stepped into a big room full of tall shelves. Dusty books filled every space, and the air smelled of paper and history. Sunlight streamed through cracks in the shutters, lighting up stacks of forgotten knowledge.

انظروا، هناك شيء لامع في الجزء الخلفي من المكتب. إنه مفتاح! صرخت لارا وهي ترفعه. كان كبير وبرونزي اللون. وعليه بطاقة مكتوب عليها: المكتبة. همست هانا مائلة "هل تعتقدون أنه يمكن أن يفتح المكتبة القديمة في الساحة؟". تبادل الأصدقاء النظرات الحماسية. وبعد المدرسة، سارعوا إلى أبواب المكتبة الخشبية الثقيلة. قام فادي بإدخال المفتاح في القفل. مع صرير عميق، فتح الباب. دخلوا إلى غرفة كبيرة مليئة بالرفوف الطويلة. ملأت الكتب المترية كل مساحة. وكانت رائحة الورق والتاريخ تفوح من الهواء. تدفقت أشعة الشمس عبر الشقوق في الستائر الخشبية، فأضاءت أكوامًا من المعرفة المنسية.



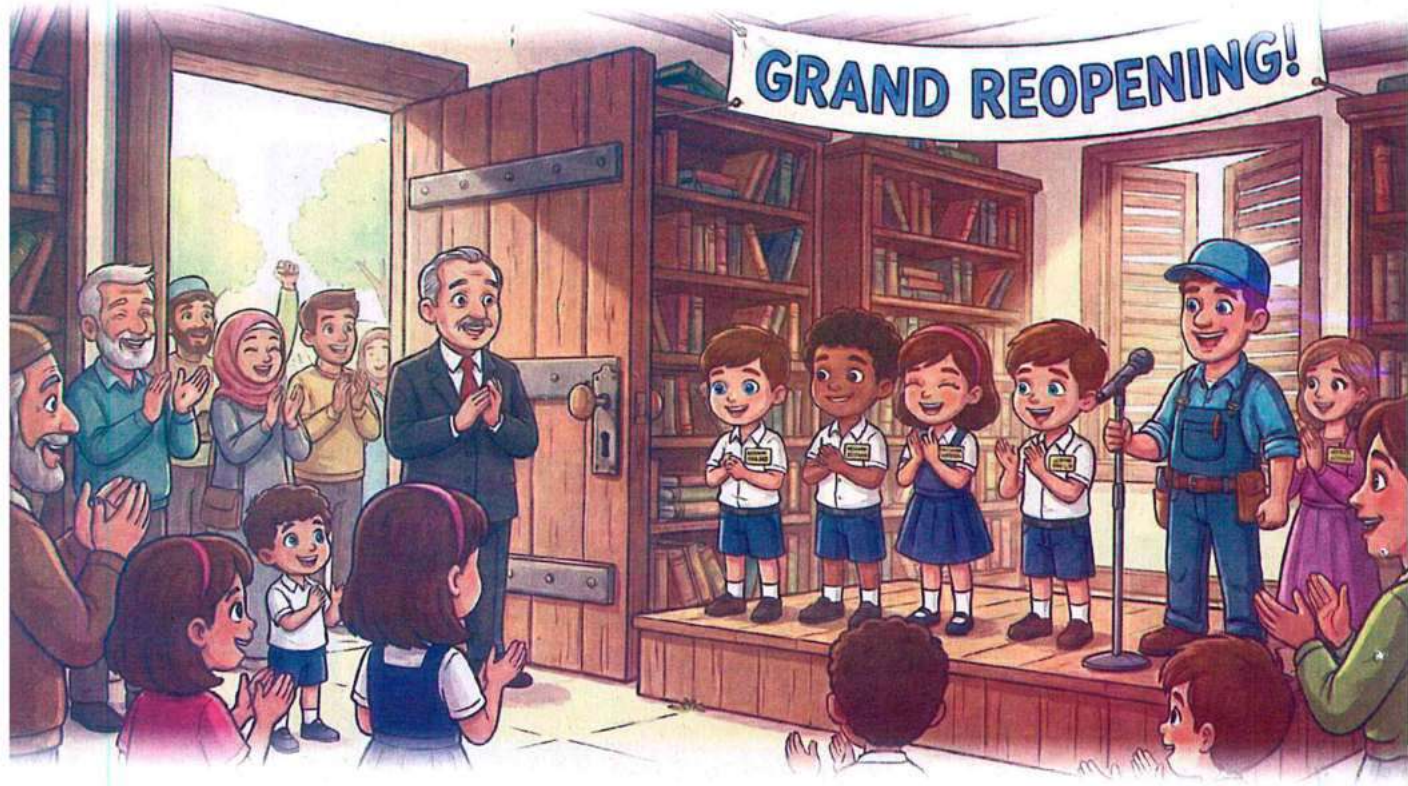
"Look at these maps!" Ziad called, unrolling a sheet of paper showing rivers, mountains, and villages from long ago. Lara found a collection of handwritten letters tied with a ribbon. "These are from travelers," she said, eyes wide. "They describe places I've never heard of." Adam pulled a thick book from the shelf. Inside were diagrams for simple machines and science experiments. "We could actually make some of these," he said. Over the next week, the friends met in the library every afternoon. They read about plants that could clean water, built a small windmill from one of the diagrams, and learned about historical events that shaped their town.

"انظروا إلى هذه الخرائط!" نادى زياد وهو يفتح ورقة تظهر أنهار وجبال وقرى منذ زمن طويل. عثرت لارا على مجموعة من الرسائل المكتوبة بخط اليد مربوطة بشريط. قالت وعيناها متسعتان: "هذه من المسافرين." "إنهم يصفون أماكن لم أسمع عنها من قبل." سحب آدم كتابًا سميكًا من الرف. وكان بداخله مخططات لآلات بسيطة وتجارب علمية. قال "يمكننا في الواقع أن نصنع بعضًا من هذه." خلال الأسبوع التالي، تقابل الأصدقاء في المكتبة بعد ظهر كل يوم. قرأوا عن النباتات التي يمكنها تنظيف المياه، وقاموا ببناء طاحونة هوائية صغيرة من أحد الرسوم التوضيحية، وتعرفوا على الأحداث التاريخية التي شكلت مدينتهم.



One day, Hana noticed the fountain in the town square wasn't working. Using a guide from the library, they figured out the problem was a clogged pipe. With the help of a local plumber, they fixed it. Soon, the fountain's water sparkled in the sunlight, and the townspeople cheered. Word spread quickly about the children's discoveries. The school principal visited the library, surprised to see it alive again.

في أحد الأيام، لاحظت هنا أن النافورة الموجودة في ساحة البلدة لا تعمل. وباستخدام دليل من المكتبة، اكتشفوا أن المشكلة هي أنبوب مسدود. وبمساعدة سباك محلي، قاموا بإصلاحه. وسرعان ما لمعت مياه النافورة في ضوء الشمس، وهتف سكان المدينة. انتشر الخبر بسرعة عن اكتشافات الأطفال. زار مدير المدرسة المكتبة وتفاجأ برؤيتها حية مرة أخرى.



"This place is a treasure," he said. "It should be open to everyone." Let's ask the townspeople to help, we can all work together to fix it," Adam said. With the town's help, the library was cleaned, repaired, and reopened. The friends became its first official volunteers, helping others find books, maps, and ideas. As they stood together at the reopening ceremony, Fady smiled. "We thought the key only opened a door," he said, "but it actually opened our minds."

قال "هذا المكان كنز. يجب أن يكون مفتوحاً للجميع." وقال آدم "دعونا نطلب من سكان المدينة المساعدة، يمكننا جميعاً العمل معاً لإصلاحها." وبمساعدة المدينة، تم تنظيف المكتبة وإصلاحها وإعادة فتحها. أصبح الأصدقاء أول متطوعين رسميين لها. حيث ساعدوا الآخرين في العثور على الكتب والخرائط والأفكار. وبينما كانا واقفين معاً في حفل إعادة الافتتاح، ابتسم فادي وقال "اعتقدنا أن المفتاح فتح الباب فقط، لكنه في الواقع فتح عقولنا."

Exercises

Story

1 Write (T) True or (F) False.

اكتب (T) للصح و (F) للخطأ.

- 1- The library was always open and full of people. ()
- 2- The children used a map to find a treasure. ()
- 3- The children used what they learned to help the town. ()
- 4- The school principal thought the library should stay closed. ()
- 5- The story teaches us that knowledge can change lives. ()
- 6- The books didn't help the children in the community. ()
- 7- Working together can help our community. ()
- 8- The children didn't care for the library. ()
- 9- The library has small shelves and few books. ()
- 10- Reading opens our minds. ()

2 Answer the following questions.

أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

1- What did the friends find in the school storage room?

.....

2- How did the friends help their town?

.....

3- What is the moral of the story?

.....

4- Is reading important? Why?

.....

5- What does the key open?

.....

6- How can we help our community?

.....

7- When did the friends meet in the library?

.....

8- How was the books in the library at first?

.....

9- Who helped the friends to fix the fountain?

10- How was the library at the end?

11- How did the friends help at the library?

12- What was inside the thick book Adam pulled?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- What did the friends find in the school storage room?

- a) A dusty book
- b) An old bronze key
- c) A map of the town
- d) A windmill

2- How did the friends help the town after exploring the library?

- a) They built a new library
- b) They opened a museum
- c) They fixed the fountain
- d) They cleaned the streets

3- What is the moral of the story?

- a) Keys are important tools
- b) Libraries are only for reading books
- c) History is boring
- d) Working together and learning can help the community

4 Who said these words?

من قائل تلك الكلمات؟

1- "Look! There's something shiny on the back of the desk." ()

2- "These are from travelers. They describe places I've never heard of." ()

3- "We could actually make some of these." ()

4- "This place is a treasure. It should be open to everyone." ()

5- "Let's ask the town people to help; we can all work together to fix it." ()

6- "We thought the key only opened a door, but it actually opened our minds." ()

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Europe. ()
- 2- People used to depend mainly on teaching and small local jobs. ()
- 3- Most villages didn't use to have factories or machines. ()
- 4- Transportation used to be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The factory produces high-quality for clothing.
a) food b) glass c) textile d) water
- 2- Schools didn't to have computers.
a) used b) use c) using d) uses
- 3- They will the road to reduce traffic.
a) paint b) cut c) hide d) extend
- 4- If you eat healthy food, you be sick.
a) didn't b) don't c) won't d) isn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(renewable - reduce - Self-driving - big - safer)

Future travel will be eco-friendly. Electric vehicles will help (1)..... pollution and noise. (2)..... cars will offer safer and easier travel. Many countries are using (3)..... energy like sun, wind, and water for transportation. Using eco-friendly transportation and renewable energy will make the world cleaner and (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Abu Simbel is a magnificent ancient complex in the south of Egypt, located near Lake Nasser. It was built to honor the god Amun and the great pharaoh Ramesses II. The temple is known for its giant statues, tall columns carved into the rock, and beautiful carved scenes. Visitors walk through its grand halls and imagine life in ancient Egypt. It remains one of the country's most remarkable symbols of strength and culture. You must see the incredible history in these temples in person. Plan your visit today to discover this amazing wonder!

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The statues are

- a) small b) giant c) modern d) empty

2- Abu Simbel remains a remarkable symbol of strength and

- a) sand b) water c) culture d) ships

B Answer the following questions.

3- Where is the Abu Simbel located in Egypt?

.....

4- What can visitors do?

.....

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- The - designed - city - is - a - place - to - be - smart .

.....

2- are - Why - factories - industries - for - important - and
- the country ?

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1- When I was seven, I (use) to ride a bike.

2- If you (studies) well, you will have full marks.

7 Punctuate the following.

egypt is changing the way people travel

.....

what can people do to stop air pollution

.....

8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the words below:

"Smart and clean transportation".

(self-driving - eco-friendly)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Monthly tests on units 1,2

Test 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The uses a hammer to carve wooden statues.
a) doctor b) guide c) artist d) tourist
- 2- You should read more to your language.
a) drink b) improve c) eat d) visit
- 3- She likes Arabic and English.
a) neither b) both c) either d) so
- 4- I searched for the boy took my book.
a) which b) when c) who d) where

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(shapes - artists - sculpture - brush - talent)

Some artists prefer (1)....., while others enjoy painting, but both types of art show (2)..... and creativity. Great (3)..... can carve wood or stone to make fantastic (4)..... that seem alive! That's so wonderful.

3 Punctuate the following.

The grand Egyptian Museum is near the pyramids.

.....
why do you like Egypt
.....

Test 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- The is the surface that an artist paints on.

- a) canvas b) palette c) frame d) brush

2- always have gears to work.

- a) Balls b) Foods c) Machines d) Books

3- She will take pizza and pasta.

- a) neither b) both c) either d) so

4- I saw the statue head is like a human.

- a) who b) which c) whose d) that

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- How - the wheels - do - robot - of - move - the ?

.....

2- could - How - make - they - loom - the ?

.....

3- one - was - of - It - inventions - fascinating - the .

.....

4- to - museum - the - People - treasures - visit - see - ancient .

.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- The toy (who) I bought broke.

2- She likes (both) apples nor bananas.

Test 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- is to shape the wood into figures.

- a) Carve b) Read c) Sleep d) Sail

2- The helps people make clothes.

- a) blueprint b) loom c) iron d) gold

3- Ali nor his sister came to school.

- a) Both b) Neither c) Either d) So

4- I read the book my father bought.

- a) who b) where c) which d) whose

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(invention – loom – clothes – statues – creativity)

Ancient Egyptians invented the (1)..... They used it to build fabric by moving threads up and down. It helped to produce fine colorful (2) which show the (3) of ancient Egypt. It is an old (4), but it still inspires us today.

3 Punctuate the following.

what does the engineer invent

.....

we painted a small canvas

.....

Test 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- She bought a soft, colorful for the new dress.

- a) metal b) sand c) wood d) fabric

2- He can answer math easily. He is

- a) shy b) talented c) lazy d) tired

3- Ahmed uncle is a great inventor. invented a gadget.

- a) which b) who c) whose d) where

4- Kinda likes football nor basketball.

- a) neither b) either c) both d) and

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- temple - Why - tourists - do - visit - the ?

.....

2- has - halls - The museum - many - and - galleries - beautiful .

.....

3- mural - Did - see - you - beautiful - the ?

.....

4- is - He - young - a - talented - engineer .

.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- (Neither) English and Arabic are my favorites.

2- The doctor (which) helped me is kind.

Test 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- The painter mixes colors on a

- a) canvas b) loom c) brush d) palette

2- My uncle designs a new machine. He is a great

- a) doctor b) teacher c) guide d) inventor

3- I met the girl father is our teacher.

- a) whose b) who c) where d) which

4- Ahmed or his sister will go to the trip.

- a) Both b) Neither c) Either d) So

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(top - shape - water - wide - vase)

My mother made a nice, colorful clay (1) with a (2) base and a narrow (3) She used blue, red, and black clay to (4) it. She made small patterns with a toothpick. It's very nice.

3 Punctuate the following.

I like red blue, and black

.....

Did you visit the grand Egyptian Museum

.....

Test 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- Temples were built for ancient like Toth.

- a) goods b) gods c) goals d) workers

2- is to make something larger or cover a wider area.

- a) Show b) Announce c) Extend d) Bring

3- My sister used to cartoon movies.

- a) watch b) watches c) watched d) watching

4- She finished her work in Alexandria.

- a) doesn't b) hasn't c) haven't d) don't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(fabric - textile - fields - school - projects)

In the past, people used to work in (1)..... or small local shops. Now, they work in (2)..... factories that produces clothes and (3)..... . Engineers work on modern (4)..... that use solar and wind power.

3 Punctuate the following.

why are factories important for a country

.....

ancient Egyptians were very creative

.....

Test 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The tomb are covered with beautiful carving.
a) gardens b) walls c) keys d) computers
- 2- My friend has great He always has great ideas.
a) extend b) innovation c) tools d) laziness
- 3- She to create new ideas.
a) use b) used c) uses d) using
- 4- Where have you with your family?
a) live b) lived c) lives d) living

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- draw - What - to - did - sister - use - your ?
.....
- 2- are - country - important for - industries - Why - our ?
.....
- 3- history - Egypt - its - has - treasures - and - protected .
.....
- 4- paintings - carvings - Have - the - liked - visitors - and ?
.....

3 Punctuate the following.

experts have restored the temple

.....

Has dina visited the temple

.....

Test 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- Egyptian have worked carefully to restore the temple.

- a) tourists b) gods c) experts d) bridges

2- The industry produces fabric and clothes.

- a) farming b) textile c) petrol d) nursing

3- We didn't to sleep late.

- a) use b) used c) using d) uses

4- you studied well? - Yes, I have.

- a) Has b) Have c) Had d) Did

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- in - Egypt's - are - desert - There - fossils - whales - of .

.....

2- of - The Temple - near - Dakka - border - lies - southern - Egypt's .

.....

3- enrich - We - trees - to - plant - soil - the .

.....

4- do - didn't - exercise - We - to - use - the evening - in .

.....

3 Punctuate the following.

my uncle is a tour guide

.....

I lived in minya with my parents

.....

Test 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Egyptians have protected their history and
a) roads b) treasures c) hospitals d) schools
- 2- The building is damaged, so we will it.
a) shine b) restore c) raise d) add
- 3- Amr used study English after school.
a) on b) at c) in d) to
- 4- Amr hasn't his friend.
a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- long - How - stood - the - has - temple ?
.....
- 2- a - you - Have - seen - fossil - the area - in ?
.....
- 3- complex - Luxor Temple - magnificent - is - ancient - a .
.....
- 4- well - The - decorated - workers - walls - have - their .
.....

3 Punctuate the following.

The temple is near the Nile

what have archaeologists discovered

Test 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Tuna el-Gebel is a mysterious site near Minya.
 a) teaching b) singing c) burial d) reading
- 2- Engineers are working on a new to improve transportation.
 a) museum b) temple c) highway d) tomb
- 3- They to walk to school.
 a) use b) uses c) using d) used
- 4- We visited ancient sites in Egypt.
 a) has b) have c) having d) are

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(columns - beaches - progress - coastal - designed)

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern (1)..... cities. The city is (2)..... to be a smart place that combines history and modern life. Visitors can enjoy peaceful (3)....., luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees. New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for (4)..... .

3 Punctuate the following.

The aswan Dam is very important

.....

we visited our uncle on tuesday.

.....

Test 1

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- All artworks are famous. ()
- 2- You can see modern and old art inside a school. ()
- 3- The visitors speak loudly when they see colorful art everywhere. ()
- 4- Art is full of color and imagination. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- He the wooden sculpture with a hammer.
a) carved b) stood c) visited d) built
- 2- A moves from side to side to keep time.
a) pendulum b) gear c) time d) workshop
- 3- I like bananas and apples.
a) either b) both c) nor d) neither
- 4- She has in Cairo for 3 years.
a) live b) lives c) lived d) living

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(invention - gears - famous - fix - keep)

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell time. Then, inventors built the first clock using (1) and a pendulum. The pendulum was important because it helped the clock (2) time more accurately. Later, a skilled engineer improved this (3), creating a clock that could count every single second. This amazing new design quickly became (4) all over Europe and changed people's daily lives forever.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Nile Valley is a place full of mystery and ancient history. Archaeologists work hard there every day. They sometimes make big discoveries deep in the desert. They search for ancient burial sites built long ago for important people. When they find a burial site, they enter the main chamber to explore it.

In these quiet chambers, they sometimes find tombs that include perfectly preserved bodies called mummies. They also may find valuable jewelry and amazing art. These discoveries, like the mummies and the art, help archaeologists understand the great secrets of ancient Egypt's burial process.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The Nile Valley is a place full of and ancient history.
 a) mystery b) building c) water d) noise
- 2- The underlined word "Archaeologist" means someone who studies places and old objects.
 a) new b) modern c) ancient d) bad

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Where do archaeologists often make big discoveries?

- 4- What do the tombs sometimes include?

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- The teacher chose (either) Ali and Ahmed to read.
- 2- The man (which) helped us is very kind.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- gears - and - workshop - of - The - full - tools - was .

.....

2- heritage - of - feel - rich - proud - We - our .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

she likes tennis very much

.....

how long have you studied English

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"New Alamein City"
(coastal city - smart)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Transportation was very fast in the past. ()
- 2- Skilled engineers build modern highways and bridges. ()
- 3- The new projects don't connect all parts of the country. ()
- 4- These projects help our country grow and develop. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The artist used a to mix blue, green, and yellow colors.
a) canvas b) palette c) sculpture d) masterpiece
- 2- We use to fix and assemble machines.
a) pen b) gate c) gadgets d) carpets
- 3- She used early last year.
a) sleep b) sleeps c) to sleep d) sleeping
- 4- If you hard, you will pass the exams.
a) study b) studying c) studies d) studied

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(fabrics - threads - blueprint - time - inspires)

The loom was an amazing invention created by the ancient Egyptians. They used this machine to create (1)..... from linen. First, skilled workers drew a (2)..... to show the size, shape, and parts needed. Then, the workers would assemble the wooden pieces carefully. They used (3)..... to make colorful cloth, showing Egyptian skill. Today, this ancient invention still (4)..... modern machines.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Karnak Temple in Luxor, Egypt, is one of the largest and most impressive ancient monuments in the world. Different pharaohs built and expanded it over many centuries. It was built mainly to honor the god Amun. The temple complex includes tall columns, huge statues, and detailed carvings that tell stories of Egypt's rulers. Although parts of the temple have been damaged by time, experts continue to restore and preserve its beauty. Today, visitors admire it and appreciate Egypt's efforts to protect this remarkable piece of history.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The pharaohs were the of Egypt who built the temple.
a) workers b) tourists c) rulers d) officers
- 2- It was built to honor the god
a) Amun b) Aton c) Thoth d) Horus

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does the temple complex include?
.....
- 4- What do experts do?
.....
- 5- Why do you think visitors appreciate Egypt's efforts?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- If you (playing) well, you will win the game.
- 2- She (is) arrived at school late.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- feel like - They - back - they - traveled - in time - have .

.....

2- craftsmen - tombs - built - royal - the - Skilled .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

I didn t use to use a computer

.....

what will they do at the museum

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Grand Egyptian Museum"

(statues - workshops)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 3

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- The transportation in cities will become slower and cleaner. ()
- 2- The monorail runs on a single track above the ground. ()
- 3- There are ticket machines and digital screens. ()
- 4- The monorail stations don't have elevators or escalators. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The ancient Egyptians used the loom to make
a) food b) clothes c) house d) jewelry
- 2- Egypt depended mainly on in the past.
a) farming b) internet c) industry d) desert
- 3- That is the boy helped me at school.
a) where b) who c) whose d) which
- 4- She likes tennis nor football.
a) both b) either c) neither d) and

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(self-driving - smarter - runs - mix - renewable)

Traveling in the future will be cleaner and (1)..... Eco-friendly and (2)..... cars will help reduce noise and pollution. Countries are now using (3)..... energy like solar and wind power for transportation because it's better and never (4)..... out, unlike gas or diesel. The clean power and eco-friendly transportation together make the planet safer for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

In the desert, there is an amazing place called Wadi El-Hitan (Valley of the Whales). Long ago, this place was covered by the sea.

Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam here. These skeletons show incredible details of their bones. Some of them are very long! These bones tell us how whales changed over millions of years.

This site is a symbol of Egypt's great natural history. Wadi El-Hitan is a protected place. Visitors can walk on special trails to see the fossils lying exactly where they were found. We must appreciate and feel proud of our country's treasures.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- Archaeologists have discovered of ancient whales.

- a) rocks b) water c) fossils d) fish

2- The site is a of Egypt's great natural history.

- a) secret b) problem c) symbol d) mistake

B Answer the following questions.

3- What do the bones tell us?

.....

4- Why do visitors walk on special trails?

.....

5- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- I (using) to help my mother when I was young.

2- We have (eat) lunch.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- of - It - inventions - was - fascinating - one - the .

2- you - Have - the - on - the walls - noticed - patterns ?

7 Punctuate the following.

what's your favorite burial site

the team will discover the old tombs

8 Write an email to your friend Ali about "Clean transportation".

Your friend's email address is alyoo@gmail.com. Your name is Ahmed. Your email address is ahmed@gmail.com.

(self-driving - renewable energy)

New Message

From :

To :

Subjects :

cc:

bcc:

.....,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 4

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

والاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries. ()
- 2- People used to depend on industry in the past. ()
- 3- All villages didn't use to have factories or machines. ()
- 4- Transportation used to be slow. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- A chamber is a special room inside a
 a) school b) house c) tomb d) hospital
- 2- Listen to the to know the stations.
 a) elevator b) escalator c) announcement d) gear
- 3- She use to play tennis in the past.
 a) don't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) didn't
- 4- If you train hard, you the game.
 a) win b) wins c) will win d) winning

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(palettes - painting - carve - clay - whisper)

Art is full of color, feeling, and imagination. Art, displayed inside a frame, can be either a (1)..... or a photograph. Painters create images on a canvas using their paintbrushes and (2)..... to mix colors. Other artists prefer sculpture. They (3)..... wood or stone to make strong figures. Some artworks become masterpieces that people remember forever. All these artworks are found in galleries where visitors sometimes (4)..... to each other about what they see.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt has started new infrastructure projects, like roads and power supplies. These projects help the country work better. In the past, traveling took a long time, and transporting goods was slow. The new projects make life easier for everyone. Now, Egyptians try to find new ways to improve infrastructure.

Engineers are building modern highways and bridges. This helps extend the road network all over the country. They also connect cities and villages that were far apart before. Now, people travel faster, and transporting goods has become much easier. These projects help the economy grow and make life better for everyone in Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Modern transportation systems now help people travel faster and transport easily.
a) people b) water c) goods d) animals
- 2- The underlined word "extend" means to make something or cover a wider area.
a) shorter b) smaller c) larger d) slower

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- How was traveling in the past?
.....
- 4- What helps the economy grow?
.....
- 5- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We (don't) use to study hard.
- 2- If Egyptians (using) green energy, the air will be cleaner.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- discovered - Archaeologists - of - have - ancient - whales - fossils .

.....

2- a special - inside - A chamber - room - is - a tomb .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

do you like bananas

.....

I like my country egypt

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Aswan Dam"

(flood - energy)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 5

الدستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- The Temple of Dakka is in Nubia. ()
- 2- Many rulers have designed temples for ancient gods. ()
- 3- Chinese and Japanese have added new walls and carvings. ()
- 4- Different cultures have respected Egypt's traditions. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- We used the to go up the building.
a) elevator b) digital screen c) pendulum d) gate
- 2- Egypt is improving through new projects.
a) sports b) development c) music d) clothing
- 3- They traveled to Alexandria.
a) has b) have c) are d) do
- 4- They didn't to watch action films.
a) using b) use c) uses d) used

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(smart - electricity - block - wooden - card)

People around the world are changing the way they travel. Electric buses and monorails are eco-friendly because they use (1)..... and produce no smoke. They have modern technology like (2)..... doors and digital screens. New ticket machines allow people to pay by (3)..... or phone. On the buses, people can travel comfortably if they follow the rules. They mustn't (4)..... the smart doors or eat on the buses.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

New Alamein City is on Egypt's beautiful northern coast, right by the blue waters of the Mediterranean Sea. It is a very modern city. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. It uses new technology and innovation to manage city services. Visitors can enjoy beautiful beaches, peaceful walkways, and luxury hotels there. The city also has universities and shopping areas. The tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future. New Alamein shows Egypt's plan for the future. It turns the northern coast into a lively city for both visitors and Egyptians.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- New Alamein City is located on Egypt's northern
 a) desert b) river c) coast d) mountain
- 2- The design of the smart city combines history and the life.
 a) past b) modern c) present d) simple

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What kind of hotels can visitors enjoy in New Alamein?

- 4- What does the city use to manage its services?

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- I have (do) my homework after school.

- 2- She likes (both) tennis nor football.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- creativity - Both - sculpture - show - paintings - and .

.....

2- invention - Egyptians - amazing - The ancient - created - an .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

I visited deir el-Medina last week

.....

Will she travel to Alexandria next monday

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"A visit to an art gallery"

(paintbrush - carve)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- The Chinese invented the loom thousands of years ago. ()
- 2- The loom is used to make clothes and blankets. ()
- 3- The engineers would draw a blueprint to show the size and shape. ()
- 4- The workers would assemble the wooden pieces carefully. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Before modern highways, transporting between cities was difficult.
a) ideas b) schools c) goods d) messages
- 2- The visitors felt when they walked through Tuna el-Gebal
a) bored b) hungry c) tired d) amazed
- 3- They will catch the bus if they up early.
a) got b) gets c) get d) getting
- 4- Ali studied his lessons.
a) isn't b) haven't c) doesn't d) hasn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(invention - infrastructure - monorail - innovation - buildings)

Last holiday, I took my first trip to Egypt's New Administrative Capital with my family. As the bus entered the city, I noticed the smooth roads and tall (1) – signs of new (2) and modern construction. We rode the (3) I was amazed by how fast and quiet it was. My father explained that Egypt's engineers use (4) to design smart transport systems.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is improving transportation with new systems to make its cities smarter and cleaner. The new monorail is a big project that will connect important places quickly and help reduce crowding. At every modern station, passengers can travel easily using ticket machines, digital screens, elevators, and escalators.

The country is also using many electric buses. These buses are very clean, produce no smoke, and have modern technology like smart doors. Passengers can pay using their card or phone. By improving these systems, Egypt ensures that it is moving smartly into the future.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Egypt's new systems help make cities smarter and
a) cleaner b) dirtier c) older d) smaller
- 2- The opposite of the underlined word "reduce" is
a) increase b) cut c) drop d) remove

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why is Egypt improving transportation with new systems?
.....
- 4- What is the new monorail?
.....
- 5- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- This is Ali (who) father is a doctor.
- 2- What (do) your brother use to draw in the past?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- their - palettes - colors - Artists - to - mix - use .

.....

2- the time - to - People - the sun - used - and - tell - sand .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ancient Egyptians were very clever

.....

who built the royal tombs

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Egyptian loom"
(clothes - inspires)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 7

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Wadi El-Hitan is a magical place in the Eastern Desert. ()
- 2- The area was covered by a very big ocean. ()
- 3- Some skeletons are shorter than 15 meters. ()
- 4- The whales changed from land animals into the magnificent ocean creatures. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- A / An is a machine used to make clothes.
a) fabric b) loom c) elevator d) pattern
- 2- Egypt has built highways because the roads were
a) wide b) nice c) narrow d) good
- 3- What you use to do last year?
a) do b) did c) was d) were
- 4- We finished our English homework.
a) has b) have c) are d) were

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(relax - artifacts - workshops - golden - ruler)

The Grand Egyptian Museum has important ancient (1) and statues. It tells the story of ancient Egypt. Visitors can see monuments like the (2) mask of Tutankhamun. The museum provides (3), so visitors can learn how the ancient Egyptians built temples. There is a café for guests to (4) after their tour and enjoy food.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The way we travel is changing to make the earth cleaner. We will use more eco-friendly transportation. New cars and buses are good for the environment because they use less fuel and make less noise. This helps to stop pollution in cities, making the air better for everyone to breathe. Some cities have self-driving cars. These cars use computers to drive safely and can help people travel more easily. It can also avoid accidents. We are using more renewable energy, like solar and wind power. Renewable energy doesn't run out or harm the environment. The world will become a cleaner and safer place.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Eco-friendly cars and buses help to reduce in cities.
 a) accidents b) noise c) pollution d) traffic
- 2- Renewable energy doesn't out.
 a) gone b) become c) run d) harm

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the main idea of the text?

- 4- Why do self-driving cars use computers?

- 5- Why are these cars and buses good for the environment?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- She (come) first if she studies hard.
- 2- They didn't (using) to watch matches.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- old objects - An - studies - places - archaeologist - ancient - and .

.....

2- site - Wadi - heritage - has - El-Hitan - become - a world .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

has the team finished their work

.....

she invented a new machine

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"First clocks"

(sand and sun - pendulum)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 8

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Passengers must block the smart doors. ()
- 2- The electric bus will help the environment. ()
- 3- Passengers will be able to pay by card or phone. ()
- 4- They won't follow the rules if they eat or drink on the bus. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Engineers are working on a new in the desert.
a) painting b) highway c) market d) recipe
- 2- The country uses power because it's green.
a) oil b) solar c) gas d) polluted
- 3- She would like to have chicken or fish.
a) neither b) either c) both d) nor
- 4- The book is in the bag, is Ali's.
a) who b) which c) whose d) where

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(treasures - history - mystery - restored - Visitors)

The Temple of Dakka is an ancient monument near Egypt's southern border in Nubia. It shows Egypt's (1)..... Different rulers have added new carvings and walls to the temple over time. Egyptian experts have carefully (2)..... the temple to protect it. (3)..... today walk through the halls, admiring the ancient art. We should be proud of Egypt's (4).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Every artwork tells a story. Inside a frame, there can be a painting or a photograph that shows something special. Artists use their tools to mix colors and create beautiful images on a canvas. Some artists prefer to make sculptures, while others enjoy painting. Both types of art show talent and creativity. Great artists can carve wood or stone to make strong shapes that seem alive! Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces that people remember forever. Inside a gallery, you can find both modern and old pieces of art. Visitors stand quietly to look closely at what they see.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Artists create beautiful images on a
a) frame b) book c) canvas d) camera
- 2- Both painting and sculpture show talent and
a) history b) color c) creativity d) stone

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What can be found inside a frame?
.....
- 4- How do great artists make strong shapes that seem alive?
.....
- 5- Why do visitors stand quietly inside a gallery?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Where (do) you seen the boy?
- 2- If you (takes) the train, you will arrive faster.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- covered - This - area - ocean - by - was - a big .

.....

2- designed - Many - for - have - rulers - gods - temples - ancient .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

The high dam is very important.

.....

what will happen if we use solar power

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Tuna el-Gebel"

(burial site – priest)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 9

🔊 الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- I made a colorful clay vase with a wide base. ()
- 2- I used black and brown clay to shape it. ()
- 3- The surface feels smooth and shiny. ()
- 4- I used the brush to make small patterns around the middle. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- A is the person who helps tourists see places.
a) craftsman b) tour guide c) designer d) teacher
- 2- We our gadgets using the right tools.
a) missed b) lost c) assemble d) invent
- 3- If she quietly, I won't hear her.
a) speak b) speaks c) spoke d) speaking
- 4- Amr use to smoke in the past.
a) don't b) wasn't c) didn't d) isn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(trails - whales - Desert - goods - Archaeologists)

Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales, is a protected place in Egypt's Western (1) It was once a large ocean. (2) found hundreds of very long, ancient whale skeletons there. The site is important because it shows how (3) developed from land animals to ocean creatures. Visitors can walk on (4) to see these amazing fossils, which are a national symbol of Egypt's history.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I made a strong stone sculpture. It is tall, with a wide, curved bottom and a round top. I used gray, black, and white clay to shape it carefully by hand, showing my creativity in the design. The surface feels smooth and shiny because I polished it after it dried. There are small, deep cuts around the middle, which I made using a small knife. I'm proud of my work because I focused hard on the shape and took my time to make it perfect. It is one of my favorite art projects! This sculpture has a colorful look because of the different natural shades of the clay I combined.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The artist showed his in the design by shaping the clay carefully by hand.
 a) strength b) speed c) focus d) creativity
- 2- The opposite of the underlined word "smooth" is
 a) hard b) soft c) linen d) dark

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why did the artist feel proud of the sculpture?

- 4- How did the artist create the small, deep cuts on the sculpture?

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- She likes both juice (nor) tea.
- 2- Ali (have) visited his uncle on the farm.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- every - The - second - clock - could - measure - new .

.....

2- improved - Egypt - its - has - highways - through - infrastructure .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

If you read more you ll be smarter.

.....

How has egypt become more self-reliant

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Deir el-Medina"

(craftsman - tour guide)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 10

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- People visit the Grand Egyptian Museum to see modern treasures. ()
- 2- People can see the mask of King Tutankhamun. ()
- 3- Students and tourists watch videos and join workshops. ()
- 4- After the visit, families enjoy food in the galleries. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- All ancient Egyptians' paintings are
 a) masterpieces b) tired c) boring d) modern
- 2- The industry in Mahalla produces fabric and clothes.
 a) steel b) textile c) food d) farming
- 3- I haven't the boy in the garden.
 a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees
- 4- What did you use at school?
 a) do b) doing c) did d) to do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(gates - preserves - whisper - ideas - pharaohs)

Visiting a temple in Egypt is an unforgettable experience. Walking through the huge stone (1)....., I felt the importance of history around me. The tall columns, covered in carvings of gods and (2)....., seemed to (3)..... ancient stories. The sunlight makes the statues shine with enchanting beauty. Exploring the temple's halls gave me a sense of wonder, and I admired how Egypt (4)..... these treasures for future generations.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt has many talented artists. They are famous for their amazing art. They make all kinds of art, like pottery, sculpture, and painting. Many modern artists have created masterpieces that people will remember forever. One of these modern, talented artists is Mahmoud Mokhtar. He carved the incredible sculpture that called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman from the country and a sphinx. He also created a famous mural. His exhibition shows his tools and canvases. Ancient Egyptians were also skillful. We can see the ancient art in museums and temples. Both ancient and modern art show Egypt's enchanting culture.

A

Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The text is about Egyptian
 a) engineers b) workers c) artists d) exhibitions
- 2- The underlined word "mural" means a painting on a
 a) wall b) sketch c) canvas d) sculpture

B

Answer the following questions.

- 3- What kinds of art do Egyptian artists make?

- 4- What did Mahmoud Mokhtar carve?

- 5- Where can we see the ancient art?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We (using) to study English on Sundays.
- 2- This is the factory (who) produces fine fabrics.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- Egypt - in - The - southern - High Dam - structure - a huge - is .

.....

2- New Alamein - sandy - You - beaches - can - in - enjoy .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ancient Egyptians made great inventions

.....

have you ever ridden on the metro

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Egypt's economy"
(textile - self-reliant)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 11

ادع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1- Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. ()
- 2- Inventors built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum. ()
- 3- The new clock couldn't measure every second. ()
- 4- The clock changed how people lived and worked every day. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The food industry pasta, juice, and snacks.
a) invents b) manufactures c) moves d) passes
- 2- The artist made a new for the temple door.
a) design b) restore c) key d) wall
- 3- The child invention won was happy.
a) who b) where c) whose d) which
- 4- If we use electric buses, the environment cleaner.
a) be b) is c) will be d) are

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(supply - southern - flooding - factories - electricity)

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt. It was built by engineers to stop the Nile from (1)..... and generate (2)..... . The dam provides water for growing crops all year for farmers, and provides a clean (3)..... of electricity to homes and (4)..... . It is one of the buildings that changed Egypt's future.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum was a special journey into Egypt's past. As I entered the huge, modern building near the Pyramids of Giza, I was amazed by its size and design. The most special thing was seeing the treasures of Tutankhamun, displayed with incredible details and care. Walking through the galleries, I admired statues, mummies, and artifacts that told stories of pharaohs and daily life thousands of years ago. The museum mixes history with technology, making the experience both educational and inspiring. It felt like walking into a living memory of ancient Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- It was a special journey into Egypt's.....
 a) modern b) present c) future d) past
- 2- The most special thing was seeing the of Tutankhamun.
 a) machines b) books c) treasures d) palettes

B Answer the following questions.

3- Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum located?

.....

4- How are Tutankhamun's treasures displayed?

.....

5- What did the journey feel like?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- Amr used (sleeps) early when he was in primary 5.

2- The boy has (invent) a new machine.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- site - a famous - is - Tuna el-Gebel - burial - Minya - near .

.....

2- faster - Modern - people - travel - transportation - allow - to .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

No, I haven t visited luxor.

.....

did he use to come early

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Egypt's new landscape"

(highway - infrastructure)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 12

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- New Alamein is an old coastal city. ()
- 2- It lies on the northern coast. ()
- 3- It has golden sandy beaches and luxury hotels. ()
- 4- They can walk in beautiful walkways filled with flowers. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- You can your writing by correcting your mistakes.
a) lose b) improve c) discover d) invent
- 2- The country continues to its road network every year.
a) expand b) destroy c) pack d) pollute
- 3- The woman we met showed us new things.
a) who b) where c) when d) whose
- 4- The passengers will buy a ticket at the machine, if they their cards.
a) forgetting b) forgot c) forgets d) forget

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(spend - early - used - use - tired)

When I was younger, I (1)..... to wake up very late and skip breakfast, which made me feel (2)..... all day. I used to (3)..... hours watching television instead of studying or exercising. Over time, I changed those habits. Now, I wake up (4)....., eat a healthy meal, and go for a walk. Thinking back, I know that my life now is better.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Today, we need very accurate ways to measure things. For example, our phones and GPS systems need to know the exact time to work well. This perfect measuring comes from clever designs and new inventions. Old clocks used a pendulum to move and keep time. But now, we use very small electronic pieces to measure time much more accurately. An engineer's smart design makes sure these tiny parts can measure every tiny piece of time. This helps all our systems, like phones and maps, stay very accurate everywhere.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Old clocks used a to move and keep time.
a) pendulum b) gear c) spring d) wire
- 2- Modern systems use very small electronic to measure time.
a) springs b) weights c) pieces d) hands

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the main idea of the text?
.....
- 4- What do modern systems use now instead of a pendulum?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- If it (be) cold, I will wear my jacket.
- 2- What (are) our teachers done?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- to - The - a smart - city - designed - place - is - be .

2- greatest - Aswan - The - buildings - Dam - one of - is - the .

7 Punctuate the following.

have engineers built new roads and bridges

the views of the mediterranean Sea look nice.

8 Write an email of SIXTY (60) words to your friend.

Write the names and email addresses on your own:

"Your trip to Wadi El-Hitan"

(Western Desert - natural museum)

New Message

From :
To :
Subjects :

cc :
bcc :

Test 13

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- The temple stood close to the Nile. ()
- 2- Visitors walk through its tall gates and watch the amazing carving. ()
- 3- Everyone who has visited the Temple of Dakka doesn't feel proud. ()
- 4- Egypt has protected its history and treasures. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- All Egyptians feel of their country's progress.
a) angry b) proud c) tired d) worried
- 2- Egypt uses solar and wind energy because they're
a) blue b) white c) green d) polluted
- 3- My grandparents to study with computers.
a) used b) didn't use c) using d) uses
- 4- Art is boring nor difficult. It's interesting.
a) neither b) either c) both d) don't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(workshop - measure - creativity - robot - amazed)

A young engineer loved solving problems and dreamed of creating something amazing. He worked day and night in his (1)....., designing each piece and programming codes. Finally, he built a new (2)..... that could walk, talk, and help people with daily tasks. The robot (3)..... everyone with its intelligence and kindness. The engineer's invention brought hope and showed how (4)..... and hard work can change the world.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Long ago, in a small village, a clever inventor dreamed of moving faster than walking. He gathered wood, iron, and determination to build something new. After many nights of trying, he created a strange machine with two wheels. At first, people laughed, but when he balanced and rolled down the street, everyone was surprised. Children ran after him, amazed by the magical ride. The "first bike," as they called it, became a symbol of creativity and freedom, inspiring others to dream and invent their own wonderful machines.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The text is about the first

- a) car b) robot c) bike d) screen

2- He dreamt of faster.

- a) painting b) sleeping c) reading d) moving

B Answer the following questions.

3- What did he gather?

.....

4- What did he create?

.....

5- How did this invention inspire others?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- She has visited neither Alexandria (and) Luxor before.

2- That is the doctor (which) helped us be well.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- for - The site - chambers - is - underground - famous - its .

.....

2- announcements - listen - Passengers - must - to - carefully .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

who built the High dam?

.....

Salma visits cairo on holidays

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"New monorail"

(transportation system - smart doors)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 14

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Ancient Egyptians were very clever. ()
- 2- They could use nature in their daily life. ()
- 3- They used the Nile water to grow crops for food. ()
- 4- They used stones to build robots. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Cars that don't hurt the environment are called
 a) pollution b) eco-friendly c) eco-tourism d) building
- 2- The artist mixed colors carefully on her before starting the mural on the school wall.
 a) sculpture b) palette c) sketch d) canvas
- 3- People used to in small factories.
 a) work b) works c) working d) worked
- 4- I like both English math.
 a) or b) and c) nor d) than

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(generate - stored - energy - food - structure)

The Aswan Dam is a huge (1) in southern Egypt. It was built by engineers to stop the Nile River from flooding and to (2) powerful energy for homes and factories. The dam keeps water (3) for farmers to grow crops all year, and it protects nearby villages. It provides Egypt with a clean supply of electricity. People living near the dam benefit greatly from this water and (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A good engineer needs both skill and creativity. When starting a modern building project, like a new bridge or school, the work always begins with a detailed plan called a blueprint. The engineer uses their creativity to design the perfect model. This blueprint shows the size, shape, and all the parts needed. It also shows exactly how to assemble all the pieces. This whole process is a type of invention. Even after the project starts, the engineer works to improve the design. This modern way of building ensures that the final structure is strong and safe. The goal is always to use a clever design and invention to make life better for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The detailed plan for a modern building project is called a
a) machine b) blueprint c) picture d) model
- 2- The engineer uses their to design the perfect model.
a) hands b) tools c) strength d) creativity

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does the blueprint show?
.....
- 4- What is the goal of using a clever design and invention?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- What has your uncle (invent) at work?
- 2- People (travel) faster if Egypt builds new highways.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- treasures - has - Egypt - history - protected - and - its .

.....

2- people - pollution - What - do - can - air - stop - to ?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

Ahmed traveled to aswan in winter

.....

have you visited new cities before

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"New Alamein City"

(luxury hotels - sandy beaches)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 15

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

ادع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- The Aswan Dam is in Northern Egypt. ()
- 2- The engineers built the Dam to stop water flooding. ()
- 3- The Aswan Dam is made from wood and clay. ()
- 4- The dam protects the villages near the river. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The engineer studied the of the new flying car before assembling its parts.
a) blueprint b) pendulum c) chamber d) border
- 2- The young artist's of a lion looked so real.
a) bridge b) palette c) sculpture d) monument
- 3- The experts have the temple to higher ground.
a) move b) moving c) moved d) moves
- 4- The engineer built the loom was very clever.
a) where b) who c) which d) whose

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(threads - fabrics - blueprint - highway - weave)

The ancient Egyptians created the loom. It's a powerful invention used to make (1)..... and blankets from linen. Before building it, a skilled worker would draw a (2)..... The loom was assembled from wooden pieces. Once ready, workers moved (3)..... up and down in a complex process to (4)..... cloth. This creative invention still inspires modern machines.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

In an old street in Alexandria, an artist worked silently in his small studio. On the walls around him hung drawings, sketches, and even a mural that showed the city's harbor at sunrise. He dreamed of creating a masterpiece.

Next door, his friend, an archaeologist, was studying an ancient sculpture. They often talked about how both art and history told Egypt's story in different ways. While one man painted the future, the other discovered the past. Their shared determination and love for beauty connected their worlds a reminder that creativity and discovery are two sides of the same spirit.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The artist worked silently in his small.....
 a) studio b) workshop c) factory d) shop
- 2- The artist's friend was a / an
 a) painter b) scientist c) archaeologist d) engineer

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What were on the walls of the studio?

- 4- What was the archaeologist studying?

- 5- What did the two friends share?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- I will help you if you (needs) help.
- 2- Our neighbors (using) to visit us on Sham EL-Nessim.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- a new - I - of - invent - want to - robots - kind .

.....

2- stood - How - has - Temple - the - long - Dakka - of ?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

I have met my friend adam

.....

I bought rice meat, and chicken

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Clean transportation"

(eco-friendly - solar and wind energy)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening texts

Unit 1 - Lesson 1 (Page : 9)

Lily loved a strange, colorful sculpture. She even saw a huge, bright mural on the wall. Her Mom pointed to a very old painting. She said, 'This is a masterpiece.' Lily felt so inspired by everything she saw. She couldn't wait to go home and start her own masterpiece right away!

Unit 1 - Lesson 3 (Page : 23)

I went to Mahmoud Moktar's gallery. And I saw the small canvas he painted when he was a university student. It was right next to both his old palette and a tiny paintbrush. His pottery room was also very interesting. He really was a talented artist.

Unit 1 - Lesson 4 (Page : 32)

People visit the Grand Egyptian Museum to see ancient treasures and statues. They learn about the history of Egypt. The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts.

Test on unit 1 (Page : 38)

Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces that people remember forever. Inside a gallery, you can find both modern and old pieces of art. Sometimes, visitors stand quietly and whisper to each other about what they see. Art is everywhere: it's neither boring nor difficult. It's full of color, feeling, and imagination.

Unit 2 - Lesson 1 (Page : 49)

To use my new robot, first, you assemble the small parts using the right tools. The robot runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun. If something isn't working, you can easily improve it. This invention is a fun way to explore new ideas every day. Let's get started!

Unit 2 - Lesson 3 (Page : 63)

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. Later, clever inventors built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum. The pendulum, which moved slowly from side to side, helped the clock keep time more accurately. One engineer, who studied how

things move, designed a clock that could measure every second. The clock, became famous all over Europe.

Unit 2 - Lessons 4,5 (Page : 69)

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt that helps people every day. It was built by engineers who wanted to stop the Nile from flooding and generate powerful energy for homes and factories. The dam, which is made of stone and concrete, also keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year.

Test on unit 2 (Page : 75)

The loom is a very important invention from ancient Egypt. People used the loom to build fabric by moving threads up and down, a process that needed a lot of skills. The Egyptian loom made it possible to produce fine, colorful cloth, which showed the creativity of ancient Egypt. Today, this ancient invention still inspires modern machines that make our clothes.

Unit 3 - Lesson 1 (Page : 86)

Last Friday, our school organized a trip to Tuna el-Gebel. We arrived at 11 a.m. We saw chambers and mummies. We took a lot of photos. We felt like we travelled back in time. Egyptians feel proud of their rich heritage. We came back at 7 p.m.

Unit 3 - Lesson 3 (Page : 103)

Many visitors have said that Deir el-Medina helps us understand the daily life in ancient Egypt. It's wonderful to see how artists lived here thousands of years ago. There are patterns on the walls. They show how the workers decorated their homes.

Unit 3 - Lessons 4,5 (Page : 111)

Egypt has protected Wadi El-Hitan carefully to ensure the fossils remain safe for future generations. Wadi El-Hitan isn't just a place of science, it is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history, reminding young people to appreciate and feel proud of their country's treasures.

Test on unit 3 (Page : 118)

Egypt has a lot of ancient sites which have a lot of history and treasures. They show that ancient Egyptians were very clever. One of the sites that amazed visitors is the Temple of Dakka. When visitors walk through its gates and watch the amazing carving they are amazed.

Review 1 (Page : 127)

I made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a wide, round base and a narrow top. I used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand, mixing some of the colors to create new shades. The surface feels smooth and shiny because I polished it after it dried. There are small patterns around the middle. I made them using a toothpick.

Unit 4 - Lesson 1 (Page : 135)

Egypt is a great country. It has determination to be a big modern country. It tries hard to build new roads and cities. The New Administrative Capital is a big smart city. With modern infrastructure projects that help people work and travel easily.

Unit 4 - Lesson 3 (Page : 151)

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, life was very different. People used to depend mainly on farming and small local jobs, and most villages didn't use to have factories or machines. We used to get many products from other countries. Transportation used to be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities.

Unit 4 - Lesson 4,5 (Page : 158)

Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex in the city of Luxor. It was built to honor the god Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt. The temple is known for its giant statues, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics. Visitors can walk through its grand gates and imagine life in ancient Egypt.

Test on unit 4 (Page : 165)

Ali traveled to Luxor last weekend. He visited Luxor Temple. It's very ancient and fantastic temple. It was built to honor the god Amun and the greatest pharaohs of Egypt. It's known for its giant statues.

Unit 5 - Lesson 1 (Page : 176)

Last week, I went to Giza Station with my family. We were going to visit our grandparents. The station is very modern. There are elevators and escalators. It was easy to move there. The doors are smart and open automatically. My dad paid for the tickets by card. At the metro. There were big digital screens to show the next station and time. It's fast and safe. We arrived at 7 o'clock.

Unit 5 - Lesson 3 (Page : 190)

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly, which means they do not harm the environment. Electric buses and trains use less fuel and make less noise, so they help reduce pollution and keep the air fresh for everyone.

Unit 5 - Lessons 4,5 (Page : 197)

In the future, I think Egypt will be different from today. There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably. These vehicles will use renewable energy, so the air will be cleaner and the streets will be quieter with much less pollution.

Unit 5 - Test (Page : 202)

The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner than before. New trains have smart doors that open and close automatically. Inside the train, there are big digital screens. They show the next station and the time. You can also hear clear announcements in Arabic and English.

Review 2 (Page : 219)

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, life was very different. People used to depend mainly on farming and small local jobs, and most villages didn't use to have factories or machines. We used to get many products from other countries. Transportation used to be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities.

Test 1 (Page : 232)

Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces that people remember forever. Inside a gallery, you can find both modern and old pieces of art. Sometimes, visitors stand quietly and whisper to each other about what they see. Art is everywhere; it's neither boring nor difficult. It's full of color, feeling, and imagination!

Test 2 (Page : 235)

In the past, roads were narrow, often crowded, and traveling between cities took a long time. People had to be patient, and transporting goods was slow and difficult. Today, skilled engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels that connect all parts of the country. These projects help our country grow and develop.

Test 3 (Page : 238)

Egypt is changing the way people travel. The transportation in cities will become faster, cleaner, and smarter. One exciting project is the monorail, a train that runs on a single track above the ground. It will connect important places quickly. At each station, passengers will find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. Some stations also have elevators and escalators, so people will travel more easily.

Test 4 (Page : 241)

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, life was very different. People used to depend mainly on farming and small local jobs, and most villages didn't use to have factories or machines. We used to get many products from other countries. Transportation used to be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities.

Test 5 (Page : 244)

The Temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years in Nubia, near Egypt's southern border. Many rulers have designed temples for ancient gods like Toth, the god of wisdom. Over time, Greek and Roman emperors have added new walls and carvings, showing how different cultures have respected Egypt's traditions.

Test 6 (Page : 247)

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the loom, which helped them make clothes, blankets, and beautiful fabrics from linen. Before building a loom, an engineer or skilled worker, would draw a blueprint to show the size, shape, and parts needed. Then, the workers would assemble the wooden pieces carefully so the loom, which needed to stand strong, could work well.

Test 7 (Page : 250)

Deep in the Western Desert, there is a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a very big ocean. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam here. Some of these skeletons are longer than 15 meters. These fossils tell a remarkable story about how whales changed from land animals into the magnificent ocean creatures.

Test 8 (Page : 253)

At monorail stations, passengers must buy a ticket and listen to announcements. They mustn't block the smart doors. The electric bus will help the environment because it runs on electricity. Passengers will be able to pay by card or phone. People will stay safe if they stand or sit properly, but they won't follow the rules if they eat or drink on the bus.

Test 9 (Page : 256)

I made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a wide, round base and a narrow top. I used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand, mixing some of the colors to create new shades. The surface feels smooth and shiny because I polished it after it dried. There are small patterns around the middle, which I made using a toothpick.

Test 10 (Page : 259)

People visit the Grand Egyptian Museum to see ancient treasures and statues. They learn about the history of Egypt. The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts. Students and tourists watch videos and join workshops. They learn how the ancient Egyptians built temples. After the visit, families enjoy food in the museum's garden café. They talk about what they saw and take photos.

Test 11 (Page : 262)

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. Later, clever inventors built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum. Then, one engineer designed a new clock that could measure every second. The clock, whose design was new and exciting, became famous all over Europe. It was one of the fascinating inventions that changed how people lived and worked every day.

Test 12 (Page : 265)

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern coastal cities. It lies on the beautiful northern coast, where the blue waters of the Mediterranean Sea meet golden sandy beaches. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future. Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees.

Test 13 (Page : 268)

The Temple of Dakka once stood close to the River Nile, but when the High Dam raised the water level, Egyptian experts have worked carefully to restore it and move every stone to higher ground. Today, visitors walk through its tall gates and watch the amazing carvings that tell stories of ancient gods and kings. Everyone who has visited Dakka feels proud of how Egypt has protected its history and treasures.

Test 14 (Page : 271)

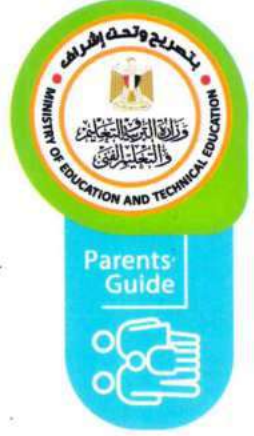
Ancient Egyptians were very clever. They could use nature in their daily life. They used the sun and sand to tell the time. They also used the Nile water to grow crops for food. They used stone to build temples that still stood today.

Test 15 (Page : 274)

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt that helps people every day. It was built by engineers who wanted to stop the Nile from flooding and to generate powerful energy for homes and factories. The dam, which is made of stone and concrete, also keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year. It helps protect villages that are near the river and gives Egypt a clean supply of electricity. The people who live around the dam benefit from its energy and water. The Aswan Dam is one of the great modern buildings that changed Egypt's future.

زوروا موقعنا الآن

السعر
120



Parents
Guide



للتفوق والنجاح سارع بشراء كتب قطر الندى في



اللغة العربية - الرياضيات - العلوم - الدراسات الاجتماعية - التربية الدينية الإسلامية
تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات ICT

محتوى كتاب اللغة الإنجليزية :

- عرض المفردات اللغوية الهامة وتقسيمها المع
- (Key Vocabulary - Vocabulary - Adjectives - Verbs - Expressions)
- ملخص لأهم النقاط الموجودة بالدرس (Main Points)
- عرض لموضوع الكتاب المدرسي مترجمة.
- عرض القواعد اللغوية بشرح مبسط وتمارين مكثفة عليها.
- تمارين مكثفة علم كل جزء.
- تمارين مكثفة علم كل درس.
- مراجعة عامة علم الوحدة (تشمل امتحانات الأهر الشريف).
- امتحانات شهرية.
- امتحانات شاملة علم المنهج .



تعلم واستمتع

Scan
Now

حقوق الطبع محفوظة لدار قطر الندى للطباعة والنشر برقم (150762)
الترقيم الدولي : 978-633-8318-47-5
رقم الإيداع : 2025 / 27728

To Contact Us:

01273221771

Follow us on social media



katrelnada.com



01273221771

Scan me



اشتروووووا الآن